ROBINSON CRUSOE

by Daniel Defoe

CHAPTER I - START IN LIFE

I WAS born in the year 1632, in the city of York, of a good family,

though not of that country, my father being a foreigner of Bremen,

who settled first at Hull. He got a good estate by merchandise,

and leaving off his trade, lived afterwards at York, from whence he

had married my mother, whose relations were named Robinson, a very

good family in that country, and from whom I was called Robinson

Kreutznaer; but, by the usual corruption of words in England, we

are now called - nay we call ourselves and write our name - Crusoe;

and so my companions always called me.

I had two elder brothers, one of whom was lieutenant-colonel to an

English regiment of foot in Flanders, formerly commanded by the

famous Colonel Lockhart, and was killed at the battle near Dunkirk

against the Spaniards. What became of my second brother I never

knew, any more than my father or mother knew what became of me.

Being the third son of the family and not bred to any trade, my

head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts. My

father, who was very ancient, had given me a competent share of

learning, as far as house-education and a country free school

generally go, and designed me for the law; but I would be satisfied

with nothing but going to sea; and my inclination to this led me so

strongly against the will, nay, the commands of my father, and

against all the entreaties and persuasions of my mother and other

friends, that there seemed to be something fatal in that propensity

of nature, tending directly to the life of misery which was to

befall me.

My father, a wise and grave man, gave me serious and excellent

counsel against what he foresaw was my design. He called me one

morning into his chamber, where he was confined by the gout, and

expostulated very warmly with me upon this subject. He asked me

what reasons, more than a mere wandering inclination, I had for

leaving father's house and my native country, where I might be well

introduced, and had a prospect of raising my fortune by application

and industry, with a life of ease and pleasure. He told me it was

men of desperate fortunes on one hand, or of aspiring, superior

fortunes on the other, who went abroad upon adventures, to rise by

enterprise, and make themselves famous in undertakings of a nature

out of the common road; that these things were all either too far

above me or too far below me; that mine was the middle state, or

what might be called the upper station of low life, which he had

found, by long experience, was the best state in the world, the

most suited to human happiness, not exposed to the miseries and

hardships, the labour and sufferings of the mechanic part of

mankind, and not embarrassed with the pride, luxury, ambition, and

envy of the upper part of mankind. He told me I might judge of the

happiness of this state by this one thing - viz. that this was the

state of life which all other people envied; that kings have

frequently lamented the miserable consequence of being born to

great things, and wished they had been placed in the middle of the

two extremes, between the mean and the great; that the wise man

gave his testimony to this, as the standard of felicity, when he

prayed to have neither poverty nor riches.

He bade me observe it, and I should always find that the calamities

of life were shared among the upper and lower part of mankind, but

that the middle station had the fewest disasters, and was not

exposed to so many vicissitudes as the higher or lower part of

mankind; nay, they were not subjected to so many distempers and

uneasinesses, either of body or mind, as those were who, by vicious

living, luxury, and extravagances on the one hand, or by hard

labour, want of necessaries, and mean or insufficient diet on the

other hand, bring distemper upon themselves by the natural

consequences of their way of living; that the middle station of

life was calculated for all kind of virtue and all kind of

enjoyments; that peace and plenty were the handmaids of a middle

fortune; that temperance, moderation, quietness, health, society,

all agreeable diversions, and all desirable pleasures, were the

blessings attending the middle station of life; that this way men

went silently and smoothly through the world, and comfortably out

of it, not embarrassed with the labours of the hands or of the

head, not sold to a life of slavery for daily bread, nor harassed

with perplexed circumstances, which rob the soul of peace and the

body of rest, nor enraged with the passion of envy, or the secret

burning lust of ambition for great things; but, in easy

circumstances, sliding gently through the world, and sensibly

tasting the sweets of living, without the bitter; feeling that they

are happy, and learning by every day's experience to know it more

sensibly,

After this he pressed me earnestly, and in the most affectionate

manner, not to play the young man, nor to precipitate myself into

miseries which nature, and the station of life I was born in,

seemed to have provided against; that I was under no necessity of

seeking my bread; that he would do well for me, and endeavour to

enter me fairly into the station of life which he had just been

recommending to me; and that if I was not very easy and happy in

the world, it must be my mere fate or fault that must hinder it;

and that he should have nothing to answer for, having thus

discharged his duty in warning me against measures which he knew

would be to my hurt; in a word, that as he would do very kind

things for me if I would stay and settle at home as he directed, so

he would not have so much hand in my misfortunes as to give me any

encouragement to go away; and to close all, he told me I had my

elder brother for an example, to whom he had used the same earnest

persuasions to keep him from going into the Low Country wars, but

could not prevail, his young desires prompting him to run into the

army, where he was killed; and though he said he would not cease to

pray for me, yet he would venture to say to me, that if I did take

this foolish step, God would not bless me, and I should have

leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his counsel when

there might be none to assist in my recovery.

I observed in this last part of his discourse, which was truly

prophetic, though I suppose my father did not know it to be so

himself - I say, I observed the tears run down his face very

plentifully, especially when he spoke of my brother who was killed:

and that when he spoke of my having leisure to repent, and none to

assist me, he was so moved that he broke off the discourse, and

told me his heart was so full he could say no more to me.

I was sincerely affected with this discourse, and, indeed, who

could be otherwise? and I resolved not to think of going abroad any

more, but to settle at home according to my father's desire. But

alas! a few days wore it all off; and, in short, to prevent any of

my father's further importunities, in a few weeks after I resolved

to run quite away from him. However, I did not act quite so

hastily as the first heat of my resolution prompted; but I took my

mother at a time when I thought her a little more pleasant than

ordinary, and told her that my thoughts were so entirely bent upon

seeing the world that I should never settle to anything with

resolution enough to go through with it, and my father had better

give me his consent than force me to go without it; that I was now

eighteen years old, which was too late to go apprentice to a trade

or clerk to an attorney; that I was sure if I did I should never

serve out my time, but I should certainly run away from my master

before my time was out, and go to sea; and if she would speak to my

father to let me go one voyage abroad, if I came home again, and

did not like it, I would go no more; and I would promise, by a

double diligence, to recover the time that I had lost.

This put my mother into a great passion; she told me she knew it

would be to no purpose to speak to my father upon any such subject;

that he knew too well what was my interest to give his consent to

anything so much for my hurt; and that she wondered how I could

think of any such thing after the discourse I had had with my

father, and such kind and tender expressions as she knew my father

had used to me; and that, in short, if I would ruin myself, there

was no help for me; but I might depend I should never have their

consent to it; that for her part she would not have so much hand in

my destruction; and I should never have it to say that my mother

was willing when my father was not.

Though my mother refused to move it to my father, yet I heard

afterwards that she reported all the discourse to him, and that my

father, after showing a great concern at it, said to her, with a

sigh, "That boy might be happy if he would stay at home; but if he

goes abroad, he will be the most miserable wretch that ever was

born: I can give no consent to it."

It was not till almost a year after this that I broke loose,

though, in the meantime, I continued obstinately deaf to all

proposals of settling to business, and frequently expostulated with

my father and mother about their being so positively determined

against what they knew my inclinations prompted me to. But being

one day at Hull, where I went casually, and without any purpose of

making an elopement at that time; but, I say, being there, and one

of my companions being about to sail to London in his father's

ship, and prompting me to go with them with the common allurement

of seafaring men, that it should cost me nothing for my passage, I

consulted neither father nor mother any more, nor so much as sent

them word of it; but leaving them to hear of it as they might,

without asking God's blessing or my father's, without any

consideration of circumstances or consequences, and in an ill hour,

God knows, on the 1st of September 1651, I went on board a ship

bound for London. Never any young adventurer's misfortunes, I

believe, began sooner, or continued longer than mine. The ship was

no sooner out of the Humber than the wind began to blow and the sea

to rise in a most frightful manner; and, as I had never been at sea

before, I was most inexpressibly sick in body and terrified in

mind. I began now seriously to reflect upon what I had done, and

how justly I was overtaken by the judgment of Heaven for my wicked

leaving my father's house, and abandoning my duty. All the good

counsels of my parents, my father's tears and my mother's

entreaties, came now fresh into my mind; and my conscience, which

was not yet come to the pitch of hardness to which it has since,

reproached me with the contempt of advice, and the breach of my

duty to God and my father.

All this while the storm increased, and the sea went very high,

though nothing like what I have seen many times since; no, nor what

I saw a few days after; but it was enough to affect me then, who

was but a young sailor, and had never known anything of the matter.

I expected every wave would have swallowed us up, and that every

time the ship fell down, as I thought it did, in the trough or

hollow of the sea, we should never rise more; in this agony of

mind, I made many vows and resolutions that if it would please God

to spare my life in this one voyage, if ever I got once my foot

upon dry land again, I would go directly home to my father, and

never set it into a ship again while I lived; that I would take his

advice, and never run myself into such miseries as these any more.

Now I saw plainly the goodness of his observations about the middle

station of life, how easy, how comfortably he had lived all his

days, and never had been exposed to tempests at sea or troubles on

shore; and I resolved that I would, like a true repenting prodigal,

go home to my father.

These wise and sober thoughts continued all the while the storm

lasted, and indeed some time after; but the next day the wind was

abated, and the sea calmer, and I began to be a little inured to

it; however, I was very grave for all that day, being also a little

sea-sick still; but towards night the weather cleared up, the wind

was quite over, and a charming fine evening followed; the sun went

down perfectly clear, and rose so the next morning; and having

little or no wind, and a smooth sea, the sun shining upon it, the

sight was, as I thought, the most delightful that ever I saw.

I had slept well in the night, and was now no more sea-sick, but

very cheerful, looking with wonder upon the sea that was so rough

and terrible the day before, and could be so calm and so pleasant

in so little a time after. And now, lest my good resolutions

should continue, my companion, who had enticed me away, comes to

me; "Well, Bob," says he, clapping me upon the shoulder, "how do

you do after it? I warrant you were frighted, wer'n't you, last

night, when it blew but a capful of wind?" "A capful d'you call

it?" said I; "'twas a terrible storm." "A storm, you fool you,"

replies he; "do you call that a storm? why, it was nothing at all;

give us but a good ship and sea-room, and we think nothing of such

a squall of wind as that; but you're but a fresh-water sailor, Bob.

Come, let us make a bowl of punch, and we'll forget all that; d'ye

see what charming weather 'tis now?" To make short this sad part

of my story, we went the way of all sailors; the punch was made and

I was made half drunk with it: and in that one night's wickedness I

drowned all my repentance, all my reflections upon my past conduct,

all my resolutions for the future. In a word, as the sea was

returned to its smoothness of surface and settled calmness by the

abatement of that storm, so the hurry of my thoughts being over, my

fears and apprehensions of being swallowed up by the sea being

forgotten, and the current of my former desires returned, I

entirely forgot the vows and promises that I made in my distress.

I found, indeed, some intervals of reflection; and the serious

thoughts did, as it were, endeavour to return again sometimes; but

I shook them off, and roused myself from them as it were from a

distemper, and applying myself to drinking and company, soon

mastered the return of those fits - for so I called them; and I had

in five or six days got as complete a victory over conscience as

any young fellow that resolved not to be troubled with it could

desire. But I was to have another trial for it still; and

Providence, as in such cases generally it does, resolved to leave

me entirely without excuse; for if I would not take this for a

deliverance, the next was to be such a one as the worst and most

hardened wretch among us would confess both the danger and the

mercy of.

The sixth day of our being at sea we came into Yarmouth Roads; the

wind having been contrary and the weather calm, we had made but

little way since the storm. Here we were obliged to come to an

anchor, and here we lay, the wind continuing contrary - viz. at

south-west - for seven or eight days, during which time a great

many ships from Newcastle came into the same Roads, as the common

harbour where the ships might wait for a wind for the river.

We had not, however, rid here so long but we should have tided it

up the river, but that the wind blew too fresh, and after we had

lain four or five days, blew very hard. However, the Roads being

reckoned as good as a harbour, the anchorage good, and our ground-

tackle very strong, our men were unconcerned, and not in the least

apprehensive of danger, but spent the time in rest and mirth, after

the manner of the sea; but the eighth day, in the morning, the wind

increased, and we had all hands at work to strike our topmasts, and

make everything snug and close, that the ship might ride as easy as

possible. By noon the sea went very high indeed, and our ship rode

forecastle in, shipped several seas, and we thought once or twice

our anchor had come home; upon which our master ordered out the

sheet-anchor, so that we rode with two anchors ahead, and the

cables veered out to the bitter end.

By this time it blew a terrible storm indeed; and now I began to

see terror and amazement in the faces even of the seamen

themselves. The master, though vigilant in the business of

preserving the ship, yet as he went in and out of his cabin by me,

I could hear him softly to himself say, several times, "Lord be

merciful to us! we shall be all lost! we shall be all undone!" and

the like. During these first hurries I was stupid, lying still in

my cabin, which was in the steerage, and cannot describe my temper:

I could ill resume the first penitence which I had so apparently

trampled upon and hardened myself against: I thought the bitterness

of death had been past, and that this would be nothing like the

first; but when the master himself came by me, as I said just now,

and said we should be all lost, I was dreadfully frighted. I got

up out of my cabin and looked out; but such a dismal sight I never

saw: the sea ran mountains high, and broke upon us every three or

four minutes; when I could look about, I could see nothing but

distress round us; two ships that rode near us, we found, had cut

their masts by the board, being deep laden; and our men cried out

that a ship which rode about a mile ahead of us was foundered. Two

more ships, being driven from their anchors, were run out of the

Roads to sea, at all adventures, and that with not a mast standing.

The light ships fared the best, as not so much labouring in the

sea; but two or three of them drove, and came close by us, running

away with only their spritsail out before the wind.

Towards evening the mate and boatswain begged the master of our

ship to let them cut away the fore-mast, which he was very

unwilling to do; but the boatswain protesting to him that if he did

not the ship would founder, he consented; and when they had cut

away the fore-mast, the main-mast stood so loose, and shook the

ship so much, they were obliged to cut that away also, and make a

clear deck.

Any one may judge what a condition I must be in at all this, who

was but a young sailor, and who had been in such a fright before at

but a little. But if I can express at this distance the thoughts I

had about me at that time, I was in tenfold more horror of mind

upon account of my former convictions, and the having returned from

them to the resolutions I had wickedly taken at first, than I was

at death itself; and these, added to the terror of the storm, put

me into such a condition that I can by no words describe it. But

the worst was not come yet; the storm continued with such fury that

the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never seen a worse. We

had a good ship, but she was deep laden, and wallowed in the sea,

so that the seamen every now and then cried out she would founder.

It was my advantage in one respect, that I did not know what they

meant by FOUNDER till I inquired. However, the storm was so

violent that I saw, what is not often seen, the master, the

boatswain, and some others more sensible than the rest, at their

prayers, and expecting every moment when the ship would go to the

bottom. In the middle of the night, and under all the rest of our

distresses, one of the men that had been down to see cried out we

had sprung a leak; another said there was four feet water in the

hold. Then all hands were called to the pump. At that word, my

heart, as I thought, died within me: and I fell backwards upon the

side of my bed where I sat, into the cabin. However, the men

roused me, and told me that I, that was able to do nothing before,

was as well able to pump as another; at which I stirred up and went

to the pump, and worked very heartily. While this was doing the

master, seeing some light colliers, who, not able to ride out the

storm were obliged to slip and run away to sea, and would come near

us, ordered to fire a gun as a signal of distress. I, who knew

nothing what they meant, thought the ship had broken, or some

dreadful thing happened. In a word, I was so surprised that I fell

down in a swoon. As this was a time when everybody had his own

life to think of, nobody minded me, or what was become of me; but

another man stepped up to the pump, and thrusting me aside with his

foot, let me lie, thinking I had been dead; and it was a great

while before I came to myself.

We worked on; but the water increasing in the hold, it was apparent

that the ship would founder; and though the storm began to abate a

little, yet it was not possible she could swim till we might run

into any port; so the master continued firing guns for help; and a

light ship, who had rid it out just ahead of us, ventured a boat

out to help us. It was with the utmost hazard the boat came near

us; but it was impossible for us to get on board, or for the boat

to lie near the ship's side, till at last the men rowing very

heartily, and venturing their lives to save ours, our men cast them

a rope over the stern with a buoy to it, and then veered it out a

great length, which they, after much labour and hazard, took hold

of, and we hauled them close under our stern, and got all into

their boat. It was to no purpose for them or us, after we were in

the boat, to think of reaching their own ship; so all agreed to let

her drive, and only to pull her in towards shore as much as we

could; and our master promised them, that if the boat was staved

upon shore, he would make it good to their master: so partly rowing

and partly driving, our boat went away to the northward, sloping

towards the shore almost as far as Winterton Ness.

We were not much more than a quarter of an hour out of our ship

till we saw her sink, and then I understood for the first time what

was meant by a ship foundering in the sea. I must acknowledge I

had hardly eyes to look up when the seamen told me she was sinking;

for from the moment that they rather put me into the boat than that

I might be said to go in, my heart was, as it were, dead within me,

partly with fright, partly with horror of mind, and the thoughts of

what was yet before me.

While we were in this condition - the men yet labouring at the oar

to bring the boat near the shore - we could see (when, our boat

mounting the waves, we were able to see the shore) a great many

people running along the strand to assist us when we should come

near; but we made but slow way towards the shore; nor were we able

to reach the shore till, being past the lighthouse at Winterton,

the shore falls off to the westward towards Cromer, and so the land

broke off a little the violence of the wind. Here we got in, and

though not without much difficulty, got all safe on shore, and

walked afterwards on foot to Yarmouth, where, as unfortunate men,

we were used with great humanity, as well by the magistrates of the

town, who assigned us good quarters, as by particular merchants and

owners of ships, and had money given us sufficient to carry us

either to London or back to Hull as we thought fit.

Had I now had the sense to have gone back to Hull, and have gone

home, I had been happy, and my father, as in our blessed Saviour's

parable, had even killed the fatted calf for me; for hearing the

ship I went away in was cast away in Yarmouth Roads, it was a great

while before he had any assurances that I was not drowned.

But my ill fate pushed me on now with an obstinacy that nothing

could resist; and though I had several times loud calls from my

reason and my more composed judgment to go home, yet I had no power

to do it. I know not what to call this, nor will I urge that it is

a secret overruling decree, that hurries us on to be the

instruments of our own destruction, even though it be before us,

and that we rush upon it with our eyes open. Certainly, nothing

but some such decreed unavoidable misery, which it was impossible

for me to escape, could have pushed me forward against the calm

reasonings and persuasions of my most retired thoughts, and against

two such visible instructions as I had met with in my first

attempt.

My comrade, who had helped to harden me before, and who was the

master's son, was now less forward than I. The first time he spoke

to me after we were at Yarmouth, which was not till two or three

days, for we were separated in the town to several quarters; I say,

the first time he saw me, it appeared his tone was altered; and,

looking very melancholy, and shaking his head, he asked me how I

did, and telling his father who I was, and how I had come this

voyage only for a trial, in order to go further abroad, his father,

turning to me with a very grave and concerned tone "Young man,"

says he, "you ought never to go to sea any more; you ought to take

this for a plain and visible token that you are not to be a

seafaring man." "Why, sir," said I, "will you go to sea no more?"

"That is another case," said he; "it is my calling, and therefore

my duty; but as you made this voyage on trial, you see what a taste

Heaven has given you of what you are to expect if you persist.

Perhaps this has all befallen us on your account, like Jonah in the

ship of Tarshish. Pray," continues he, "what are you; and on what

account did you go to sea?" Upon that I told him some of my story;

at the end of which he burst out into a strange kind of passion:

"What had I done," says he, "that such an unhappy wretch should

come into my ship? I would not set my foot in the same ship with

thee again for a thousand pounds." This indeed was, as I said, an

excursion of his spirits, which were yet agitated by the sense of

his loss, and was farther than he could have authority to go.

However, he afterwards talked very gravely to me, exhorting me to

go back to my father, and not tempt Providence to my ruin, telling

me I might see a visible hand of Heaven against me. "And, young

man," said he, "depend upon it, if you do not go back, wherever you

go, you will meet with nothing but disasters and disappointments,

till your father's words are fulfilled upon you."

We parted soon after; for I made him little answer, and I saw him

no more; which way he went I knew not. As for me, having some

money in my pocket, I travelled to London by land; and there, as

well as on the road, had many struggles with myself what course of

life I should take, and whether I should go home or to sea.

As to going home, shame opposed the best motions that offered to my

thoughts, and it immediately occurred to me how I should be laughed

at among the neighbours, and should be ashamed to see, not my

father and mother only, but even everybody else; from whence I have

since often observed, how incongruous and irrational the common

temper of mankind is, especially of youth, to that reason which

ought to guide them in such cases - viz. that they are not ashamed

to sin, and yet are ashamed to repent; not ashamed of the action

for which they ought justly to be esteemed fools, but are ashamed

of the returning, which only can make them be esteemed wise men.

In this state of life, however, I remained some time, uncertain

what measures to take, and what course of life to lead. An

irresistible reluctance continued to going home; and as I stayed

away a while, the remembrance of the distress I had been in wore

off, and as that abated, the little motion I had in my desires to

return wore off with it, till at last I quite laid aside the

thoughts of it, and looked out for a voyage.

CHAPTER II - SLAVERY AND ESCAPE

THAT evil influence which carried me first away from my father's

house - which hurried me into the wild and indigested notion of

raising my fortune, and that impressed those conceits so forcibly

upon me as to make me deaf to all good advice, and to the

entreaties and even the commands of my father - I say, the same

influence, whatever it was, presented the most unfortunate of all

enterprises to my view; and I went on board a vessel bound to the

coast of Africa; or, as our sailors vulgarly called it, a voyage to

Guinea.

It was my great misfortune that in all these adventures I did not

ship myself as a sailor; when, though I might indeed have worked a

little harder than ordinary, yet at the same time I should have

learnt the duty and office of a fore-mast man, and in time might

have qualified myself for a mate or lieutenant, if not for a

master. But as it was always my fate to choose for the worse, so I

did here; for having money in my pocket and good clothes upon my

back, I would always go on board in the habit of a gentleman; and

so I neither had any business in the ship, nor learned to do any.

It was my lot first of all to fall into pretty good company in

London, which does not always happen to such loose and misguided

young fellows as I then was; the devil generally not omitting to

lay some snare for them very early; but it was not so with me. I

first got acquainted with the master of a ship who had been on the

coast of Guinea; and who, having had very good success there, was

resolved to go again. This captain taking a fancy to my

conversation, which was not at all disagreeable at that time,

hearing me say I had a mind to see the world, told me if I would go

the voyage with him I should be at no expense; I should be his

messmate and his companion; and if I could carry anything with me,

I should have all the advantage of it that the trade would admit;

and perhaps I might meet with some encouragement.

I embraced the offer; and entering into a strict friendship with

this captain, who was an honest, plain-dealing man, I went the

voyage with him, and carried a small adventure with me, which, by

the disinterested honesty of my friend the captain, I increased

very considerably; for I carried about 40 pounds in such toys and

trifles as the captain directed me to buy. These 40 pounds I had

mustered together by the assistance of some of my relations whom I

corresponded with; and who, I believe, got my father, or at least

my mother, to contribute so much as that to my first adventure.

This was the only voyage which I may say was successful in all my

adventures, which I owe to the integrity and honesty of my friend

the captain; under whom also I got a competent knowledge of the

mathematics and the rules of navigation, learned how to keep an

account of the ship's course, take an observation, and, in short,

to understand some things that were needful to be understood by a

sailor; for, as he took delight to instruct me, I took delight to

learn; and, in a word, this voyage made me both a sailor and a

merchant; for I brought home five pounds nine ounces of gold-dust

for my adventure, which yielded me in London, at my return, almost

300 pounds; and this filled me with those aspiring thoughts which

have since so completed my ruin.

Yet even in this voyage I had my misfortunes too; particularly,

that I was continually sick, being thrown into a violent calenture

by the excessive heat of the climate; our principal trading being

upon the coast, from latitude of 15 degrees north even to the line

itself.

I was now set up for a Guinea trader; and my friend, to my great

misfortune, dying soon after his arrival, I resolved to go the same

voyage again, and I embarked in the same vessel with one who was

his mate in the former voyage, and had now got the command of the

ship. This was the unhappiest voyage that ever man made; for

though I did not carry quite 100 pounds of my new-gained wealth, so

that I had 200 pounds left, which I had lodged with my friend's

widow, who was very just to me, yet I fell into terrible

misfortunes. The first was this: our ship making her course

towards the Canary Islands, or rather between those islands and the

African shore, was surprised in the grey of the morning by a

Turkish rover of Sallee, who gave chase to us with all the sail she

could make. We crowded also as much canvas as our yards would

spread, or our masts carry, to get clear; but finding the pirate

gained upon us, and would certainly come up with us in a few hours,

we prepared to fight; our ship having twelve guns, and the rogue

eighteen. About three in the afternoon he came up with us, and

bringing to, by mistake, just athwart our quarter, instead of

athwart our stern, as he intended, we brought eight of our guns to

bear on that side, and poured in a broadside upon him, which made

him sheer off again, after returning our fire, and pouring in also

his small shot from near two hundred men which he had on board.

However, we had not a man touched, all our men keeping close. He

prepared to attack us again, and we to defend ourselves. But

laying us on board the next time upon our other quarter, he entered

sixty men upon our decks, who immediately fell to cutting and

hacking the sails and rigging. We plied them with small shot,

half-pikes, powder-chests, and such like, and cleared our deck of

them twice. However, to cut short this melancholy part of our

story, our ship being disabled, and three of our men killed, and

eight wounded, we were obliged to yield, and were carried all

prisoners into Sallee, a port belonging to the Moors.

The usage I had there was not so dreadful as at first I

apprehended; nor was I carried up the country to the emperor's

court, as the rest of our men were, but was kept by the captain of

the rover as his proper prize, and made his slave, being young and

nimble, and fit for his business. At this surprising change of my

circumstances, from a merchant to a miserable slave, I was

perfectly overwhelmed; and now I looked back upon my father's

prophetic discourse to me, that I should be miserable and have none

to relieve me, which I thought was now so effectually brought to

pass that I could not be worse; for now the hand of Heaven had

overtaken me, and I was undone without redemption; but, alas! this

was but a taste of the misery I was to go through, as will appear

in the sequel of this story.

As my new patron, or master, had taken me home to his house, so I

was in hopes that he would take me with him when he went to sea

again, believing that it would some time or other be his fate to be

taken by a Spanish or Portugal man-of-war; and that then I should

be set at liberty. But this hope of mine was soon taken away; for

when he went to sea, he left me on shore to look after his little

garden, and do the common drudgery of slaves about his house; and

when he came home again from his cruise, he ordered me to lie in

the cabin to look after the ship.

Here I meditated nothing but my escape, and what method I might

take to effect it, but found no way that had the least probability

in it; nothing presented to make the supposition of it rational;

for I had nobody to communicate it to that would embark with me -

no fellow-slave, no Englishman, Irishman, or Scotchman there but

myself; so that for two years, though I often pleased myself with

the imagination, yet I never had the least encouraging prospect of

putting it in practice.

After about two years, an odd circumstance presented itself, which

put the old thought of making some attempt for my liberty again in

my head. My patron lying at home longer than usual without fitting

out his ship, which, as I heard, was for want of money, he used

constantly, once or twice a week, sometimes oftener if the weather

was fair, to take the ship's pinnace and go out into the road a-

fishing; and as he always took me and young Maresco with him to row

the boat, we made him very merry, and I proved very dexterous in

catching fish; insomuch that sometimes he would send me with a

Moor, one of his kinsmen, and the youth - the Maresco, as they

called him - to catch a dish of fish for him.

It happened one time, that going a-fishing in a calm morning, a fog

rose so thick that, though we were not half a league from the

shore, we lost sight of it; and rowing we knew not whither or which

way, we laboured all day, and all the next night; and when the

morning came we found we had pulled off to sea instead of pulling

in for the shore; and that we were at least two leagues from the

shore. However, we got well in again, though with a great deal of

labour and some danger; for the wind began to blow pretty fresh in

the morning; but we were all very hungry.

But our patron, warned by this disaster, resolved to take more care

of himself for the future; and having lying by him the longboat of

our English ship that he had taken, he resolved he would not go a-

fishing any more without a compass and some provision; so he

ordered the carpenter of his ship, who also was an English slave,

to build a little state-room, or cabin, in the middle of the long-

boat, like that of a barge, with a place to stand behind it to

steer, and haul home the main-sheet; the room before for a hand or

two to stand and work the sails. She sailed with what we call a

shoulder-of-mutton sail; and the boom jibed over the top of the

cabin, which lay very snug and low, and had in it room for him to

lie, with a slave or two, and a table to eat on, with some small

lockers to put in some bottles of such liquor as he thought fit to

drink; and his bread, rice, and coffee.

We went frequently out with this boat a-fishing; and as I was most

dexterous to catch fish for him, he never went without me. It

happened that he had appointed to go out in this boat, either for

pleasure or for fish, with two or three Moors of some distinction

in that place, and for whom he had provided extraordinarily, and

had, therefore, sent on board the boat overnight a larger store of

provisions than ordinary; and had ordered me to get ready three

fusees with powder and shot, which were on board his ship, for that

they designed some sport of fowling as well as fishing.

I got all things ready as he had directed, and waited the next

morning with the boat washed clean, her ancient and pendants out,

and everything to accommodate his guests; when by-and-by my patron

came on board alone, and told me his guests had put off going from

some business that fell out, and ordered me, with the man and boy,

as usual, to go out with the boat and catch them some fish, for

that his friends were to sup at his house, and commanded that as

soon as I got some fish I should bring it home to his house; all

which I prepared to do.

This moment my former notions of deliverance darted into my

thoughts, for now I found I was likely to have a little ship at my

command; and my master being gone, I prepared to furnish myself,

not for fishing business, but for a voyage; though I knew not,

neither did I so much as consider, whither I should steer -

anywhere to get out of that place was my desire.

My first contrivance was to make a pretence to speak to this Moor,

to get something for our subsistence on board; for I told him we

must not presume to eat of our patron's bread. He said that was

true; so he brought a large basket of rusk or biscuit, and three

jars of fresh water, into the boat. I knew where my patron's case

of bottles stood, which it was evident, by the make, were taken out

of some English prize, and I conveyed them into the boat while the

Moor was on shore, as if they had been there before for our master.

I conveyed also a great lump of beeswax into the boat, which

weighed about half a hundred-weight, with a parcel of twine or

thread, a hatchet, a saw, and a hammer, all of which were of great

use to us afterwards, especially the wax, to make candles. Another

trick I tried upon him, which he innocently came into also: his

name was Ismael, which they call Muley, or Moely; so I called to

him - "Moely," said I, "our patron's guns are on board the boat;

can you not get a little powder and shot? It may be we may kill

some alcamies (a fowl like our curlews) for ourselves, for I know

he keeps the gunner's stores in the ship." "Yes," says he, "I'll

bring some;" and accordingly he brought a great leather pouch,

which held a pound and a half of powder, or rather more; and

another with shot, that had five or six pounds, with some bullets,

and put all into the boat. At the same time I had found some

powder of my master's in the great cabin, with which I filled one

of the large bottles in the case, which was almost empty, pouring

what was in it into another; and thus furnished with everything

needful, we sailed out of the port to fish. The castle, which is

at the entrance of the port, knew who we were, and took no notice

of us; and we were not above a mile out of the port before we

hauled in our sail and set us down to fish. The wind blew from the

N.N.E., which was contrary to my desire, for had it blown southerly

I had been sure to have made the coast of Spain, and at least

reached to the bay of Cadiz; but my resolutions were, blow which

way it would, I would be gone from that horrid place where I was,

and leave the rest to fate.

After we had fished some time and caught nothing - for when I had

fish on my hook I would not pull them up, that he might not see

them - I said to the Moor, "This will not do; our master will not

be thus served; we must stand farther off." He, thinking no harm,

agreed, and being in the head of the boat, set the sails; and, as I

had the helm, I ran the boat out near a league farther, and then

brought her to, as if I would fish; when, giving the boy the helm,

I stepped forward to where the Moor was, and making as if I stooped

for something behind him, I took him by surprise with my arm under

his waist, and tossed him clear overboard into the sea. He rose

immediately, for he swam like a cork, and called to me, begged to

be taken in, told me he would go all over the world with me. He

swam so strong after the boat that he would have reached me very

quickly, there being but little wind; upon which I stepped into the

cabin, and fetching one of the fowling-pieces, I presented it at

him, and told him I had done him no hurt, and if he would be quiet

I would do him none. "But," said I, "you swim well enough to reach

to the shore, and the sea is calm; make the best of your way to

shore, and I will do you no harm; but if you come near the boat

I'll shoot you through the head, for I am resolved to have my

liberty;" so he turned himself about, and swam for the shore, and I

make no doubt but he reached it with ease, for he was an excellent

swimmer.

I could have been content to have taken this Moor with me, and have

drowned the boy, but there was no venturing to trust him. When he

was gone, I turned to the boy, whom they called Xury, and said to

him, "Xury, if you will be faithful to me, I'll make you a great

man; but if you will not stroke your face to be true to me" - that

is, swear by Mahomet and his father's beard - "I must throw you

into the sea too." The boy smiled in my face, and spoke so

innocently that I could not distrust him, and swore to be faithful

to me, and go all over the world with me.

While I was in view of the Moor that was swimming, I stood out

directly to sea with the boat, rather stretching to windward, that

they might think me gone towards the Straits' mouth (as indeed any

one that had been in their wits must have been supposed to do): for

who would have supposed we were sailed on to the southward, to the

truly Barbarian coast, where whole nations of negroes were sure to

surround us with their canoes and destroy us; where we could not go

on shore but we should be devoured by savage beasts, or more

merciless savages of human kind.

But as soon as it grew dusk in the evening, I changed my course,

and steered directly south and by east, bending my course a little

towards the east, that I might keep in with the shore; and having a

fair, fresh gale of wind, and a smooth, quiet sea, I made such sail

that I believe by the next day, at three o'clock in the afternoon,

when I first made the land, I could not be less than one hundred

and fifty miles south of Sallee; quite beyond the Emperor of

Morocco's dominions, or indeed of any other king thereabouts, for

we saw no people.

Yet such was the fright I had taken of the Moors, and the dreadful

apprehensions I had of falling into their hands, that I would not

stop, or go on shore, or come to an anchor; the wind continuing

fair till I had sailed in that manner five days; and then the wind

shifting to the southward, I concluded also that if any of our

vessels were in chase of me, they also would now give over; so I

ventured to make to the coast, and came to an anchor in the mouth

of a little river, I knew not what, nor where, neither what

latitude, what country, what nation, or what river. I neither saw,

nor desired to see any people; the principal thing I wanted was

fresh water. We came into this creek in the evening, resolving to

swim on shore as soon as it was dark, and discover the country; but

as soon as it was quite dark, we heard such dreadful noises of the

barking, roaring, and howling of wild creatures, of we knew not

what kinds, that the poor boy was ready to die with fear, and

begged of me not to go on shore till day. "Well, Xury," said I,

"then I won't; but it may be that we may see men by day, who will

be as bad to us as those lions." "Then we give them the shoot

gun," says Xury, laughing, "make them run wey." Such English Xury

spoke by conversing among us slaves. However, I was glad to see

the boy so cheerful, and I gave him a dram (out of our patron's

case of bottles) to cheer him up. After all, Xury's advice was

good, and I took it; we dropped our little anchor, and lay still

all night; I say still, for we slept none; for in two or three

hours we saw vast great creatures (we knew not what to call them)

of many sorts, come down to the sea-shore and run into the water,

wallowing and washing themselves for the pleasure of cooling

themselves; and they made such hideous howlings and yellings, that

I never indeed heard the like.

Xury was dreadfully frighted, and indeed so was I too; but we were

both more frighted when we heard one of these mighty creatures come

swimming towards our boat; we could not see him, but we might hear

him by his blowing to be a monstrous huge and furious beast. Xury

said it was a lion, and it might be so for aught I know; but poor

Xury cried to me to weigh the anchor and row away; "No," says I,

"Xury; we can slip our cable, with the buoy to it, and go off to

sea; they cannot follow us far." I had no sooner said so, but I

perceived the creature (whatever it was) within two oars' length,

which something surprised me; however, I immediately stepped to the

cabin door, and taking up my gun, fired at him; upon which he

immediately turned about and swam towards the shore again.

But it is impossible to describe the horrid noises, and hideous

cries and howlings that were raised, as well upon the edge of the

shore as higher within the country, upon the noise or report of the

gun, a thing I have some reason to believe those creatures had

never heard before: this convinced me that there was no going on

shore for us in the night on that coast, and how to venture on

shore in the day was another question too; for to have fallen into

the hands of any of the savages had been as bad as to have fallen

into the hands of the lions and tigers; at least we were equally

apprehensive of the danger of it.

Be that as it would, we were obliged to go on shore somewhere or

other for water, for we had not a pint left in the boat; when and

where to get to it was the point. Xury said, if I would let him go

on shore with one of the jars, he would find if there was any

water, and bring some to me. I asked him why he would go? why I

should not go, and he stay in the boat? The boy answered with so

much affection as made me love him ever after. Says he, "If wild

mans come, they eat me, you go wey." "Well, Xury," said I, "we

will both go and if the wild mans come, we will kill them, they

shall eat neither of us." So I gave Xury a piece of rusk bread to

eat, and a dram out of our patron's case of bottles which I

mentioned before; and we hauled the boat in as near the shore as we

thought was proper, and so waded on shore, carrying nothing but our

arms and two jars for water.

I did not care to go out of sight of the boat, fearing the coming

of canoes with savages down the river; but the boy seeing a low

place about a mile up the country, rambled to it, and by-and-by I

saw him come running towards me. I thought he was pursued by some

savage, or frighted with some wild beast, and I ran forward towards

him to help him; but when I came nearer to him I saw something

hanging over his shoulders, which was a creature that he had shot,

like a hare, but different in colour, and longer legs; however, we

were very glad of it, and it was very good meat; but the great joy

that poor Xury came with, was to tell me he had found good water

and seen no wild mans.

But we found afterwards that we need not take such pains for water,

for a little higher up the creek where we were we found the water

fresh when the tide was out, which flowed but a little way up; so

we filled our jars, and feasted on the hare he had killed, and

prepared to go on our way, having seen no footsteps of any human

creature in that part of the country.

As I had been one voyage to this coast before, I knew very well

that the islands of the Canaries, and the Cape de Verde Islands

also, lay not far off from the coast. But as I had no instruments

to take an observation to know what latitude we were in, and not

exactly knowing, or at least remembering, what latitude they were

in, I knew not where to look for them, or when to stand off to sea

towards them; otherwise I might now easily have found some of these

islands. But my hope was, that if I stood along this coast till I

came to that part where the English traded, I should find some of

their vessels upon their usual design of trade, that would relieve

and take us in.

By the best of my calculation, that place where I now was must be

that country which, lying between the Emperor of Morocco's

dominions and the negroes, lies waste and uninhabited, except by

wild beasts; the negroes having abandoned it and gone farther south

for fear of the Moors, and the Moors not thinking it worth

inhabiting by reason of its barrenness; and indeed, both forsaking

it because of the prodigious number of tigers, lions, leopards, and

other furious creatures which harbour there; so that the Moors use

it for their hunting only, where they go like an army, two or three

thousand men at a time; and indeed for near a hundred miles

together upon this coast we saw nothing but a waste, uninhabited

country by day, and heard nothing but howlings and roaring of wild

beasts by night.

Once or twice in the daytime I thought I saw the Pico of Teneriffe,

being the high top of the Mountain Teneriffe in the Canaries, and

had a great mind to venture out, in hopes of reaching thither; but

having tried twice, I was forced in again by contrary winds, the

sea also going too high for my little vessel; so, I resolved to

pursue my first design, and keep along the shore.

Several times I was obliged to land for fresh water, after we had

left this place; and once in particular, being early in morning, we

came to an anchor under a little point of land, which was pretty

high; and the tide beginning to flow, we lay still to go farther

in. Xury, whose eyes were more about him than it seems mine were,

calls softly to me, and tells me that we had best go farther off

the shore; "For," says he, "look, yonder lies a dreadful monster on

the side of that hillock, fast asleep." I looked where he pointed,

and saw a dreadful monster indeed, for it was a terrible, great

lion that lay on the side of the shore, under the shade of a piece

of the hill that hung as it were a little over him. "Xury," says

I, "you shall on shore and kill him." Xury, looked frighted, and

said, "Me kill! he eat me at one mouth!" - one mouthful he meant.

However, I said no more to the boy, but bade him lie still, and I

took our biggest gun, which was almost musket-bore, and loaded it

with a good charge of powder, and with two slugs, and laid it down;

then I loaded another gun with two bullets; and the third (for we

had three pieces) I loaded with five smaller bullets. I took the

best aim I could with the first piece to have shot him in the head,

but he lay so with his leg raised a little above his nose, that the

slugs hit his leg about the knee and broke the bone. He started

up, growling at first, but finding his leg broken, fell down again;

and then got upon three legs, and gave the most hideous roar that

ever I heard. I was a little surprised that I had not hit him on

the head; however, I took up the second piece immediately, and

though he began to move off, fired again, and shot him in the head,

and had the pleasure to see him drop and make but little noise, but

lie struggling for life. Then Xury took heart, and would have me

let him go on shore. "Well, go," said I: so the boy jumped into

the water and taking a little gun in one hand, swam to shore with

the other hand, and coming close to the creature, put the muzzle of

the piece to his ear, and shot him in the head again, which

despatched him quite.

This was game indeed to us, but this was no food; and I was very

sorry to lose three charges of powder and shot upon a creature that

was good for nothing to us. However, Xury said he would have some

of him; so he comes on board, and asked me to give him the hatchet.

"For what, Xury?" said I. "Me cut off his head," said he.

However, Xury could not cut off his head, but he cut off a foot,

and brought it with him, and it was a monstrous great one.

I bethought myself, however, that, perhaps the skin of him might,

one way or other, be of some value to us; and I resolved to take

off his skin if I could. So Xury and I went to work with him; but

Xury was much the better workman at it, for I knew very ill how to

do it. Indeed, it took us both up the whole day, but at last we

got off the hide of him, and spreading it on the top of our cabin,

the sun effectually dried it in two days' time, and it afterwards

served me to lie upon.

CHAPTER III - WRECKED ON A DESERT ISLAND

AFTER this stop, we made on to the southward continually for ten or

twelve days, living very sparingly on our provisions, which began

to abate very much, and going no oftener to the shore than we were

obliged to for fresh water. My design in this was to make the

river Gambia or Senegal, that is to say anywhere about the Cape de

Verde, where I was in hopes to meet with some European ship; and if

I did not, I knew not what course I had to take, but to seek for

the islands, or perish there among the negroes. I knew that all

the ships from Europe, which sailed either to the coast of Guinea

or to Brazil, or to the East Indies, made this cape, or those

islands; and, in a word, I put the whole of my fortune upon this

single point, either that I must meet with some ship or must

perish.

When I had pursued this resolution about ten days longer, as I have

said, I began to see that the land was inhabited; and in two or

three places, as we sailed by, we saw people stand upon the shore

to look at us; we could also perceive they were quite black and

naked. I was once inclined to have gone on shore to them; but Xury

was my better counsellor, and said to me, "No go, no go." However,

I hauled in nearer the shore that I might talk to them, and I found

they ran along the shore by me a good way. I observed they had no

weapons in their hand, except one, who had a long slender stick,

which Xury said was a lance, and that they could throw them a great

way with good aim; so I kept at a distance, but talked with them by

signs as well as I could; and particularly made signs for something

to eat: they beckoned to me to stop my boat, and they would fetch

me some meat. Upon this I lowered the top of my sail and lay by,

and two of them ran up into the country, and in less than half-an-

hour came back, and brought with them two pieces of dried flesh and

some corn, such as is the produce of their country; but we neither

knew what the one or the other was; however, we were willing to

accept it, but how to come at it was our next dispute, for I would

not venture on shore to them, and they were as much afraid of us;

but they took a safe way for us all, for they brought it to the

shore and laid it down, and went and stood a great way off till we

fetched it on board, and then came close to us again.

We made signs of thanks to them, for we had nothing to make them

amends; but an opportunity offered that very instant to oblige them

wonderfully; for while we were lying by the shore came two mighty

creatures, one pursuing the other (as we took it) with great fury

from the mountains towards the sea; whether it was the male

pursuing the female, or whether they were in sport or in rage, we

could not tell, any more than we could tell whether it was usual or

strange, but I believe it was the latter; because, in the first

place, those ravenous creatures seldom appear but in the night;

and, in the second place, we found the people terribly frighted,

especially the women. The man that had the lance or dart did not

fly from them, but the rest did; however, as the two creatures ran

directly into the water, they did not offer to fall upon any of the

negroes, but plunged themselves into the sea, and swam about, as if

they had come for their diversion; at last one of them began to

come nearer our boat than at first I expected; but I lay ready for

him, for I had loaded my gun with all possible expedition, and bade

Xury load both the others. As soon as he came fairly within my

reach, I fired, and shot him directly in the head; immediately he

sank down into the water, but rose instantly, and plunged up and

down, as if he were struggling for life, and so indeed he was; he

immediately made to the shore; but between the wound, which was his

mortal hurt, and the strangling of the water, he died just before

he reached the shore.

It is impossible to express the astonishment of these poor

creatures at the noise and fire of my gun: some of them were even

ready to die for fear, and fell down as dead with the very terror;

but when they saw the creature dead, and sunk in the water, and

that I made signs to them to come to the shore, they took heart and

came, and began to search for the creature. I found him by his

blood staining the water; and by the help of a rope, which I slung

round him, and gave the negroes to haul, they dragged him on shore,

and found that it was a most curious leopard, spotted, and fine to

an admirable degree; and the negroes held up their hands with

admiration, to think what it was I had killed him with.

The other creature, frighted with the flash of fire and the noise

of the gun, swam on shore, and ran up directly to the mountains

from whence they came; nor could I, at that distance, know what it

was. I found quickly the negroes wished to eat the flesh of this

creature, so I was willing to have them take it as a favour from

me; which, when I made signs to them that they might take him, they

were very thankful for. Immediately they fell to work with him;

and though they had no knife, yet, with a sharpened piece of wood,

they took off his skin as readily, and much more readily, than we

could have done with a knife. They offered me some of the flesh,

which I declined, pointing out that I would give it them; but made

signs for the skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me

a great deal more of their provisions, which, though I did not

understand, yet I accepted. I then made signs to them for some

water, and held out one of my jars to them, turning it bottom

upward, to show that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it

filled. They called immediately to some of their friends, and

there came two women, and brought a great vessel made of earth, and

burnt, as I supposed, in the sun, this they set down to me, as

before, and I sent Xury on shore with my jars, and filled them all

three. The women were as naked as the men.

I was now furnished with roots and corn, such as it was, and water;

and leaving my friendly negroes, I made forward for about eleven

days more, without offering to go near the shore, till I saw the

land run out a great length into the sea, at about the distance of

four or five leagues before me; and the sea being very calm, I kept

a large offing to make this point. At length, doubling the point,

at about two leagues from the land, I saw plainly land on the other

side, to seaward; then I concluded, as it was most certain indeed,

that this was the Cape de Verde, and those the islands called, from

thence, Cape de Verde Islands. However, they were at a great

distance, and I could not well tell what I had best to do; for if I

should be taken with a fresh of wind, I might neither reach one or

other.

In this dilemma, as I was very pensive, I stepped into the cabin

and sat down, Xury having the helm; when, on a sudden, the boy

cried out, "Master, master, a ship with a sail!" and the foolish

boy was frighted out of his wits, thinking it must needs be some of

his master's ships sent to pursue us, but I knew we were far enough

out of their reach. I jumped out of the cabin, and immediately

saw, not only the ship, but that it was a Portuguese ship; and, as

I thought, was bound to the coast of Guinea, for negroes. But,

when I observed the course she steered, I was soon convinced they

were bound some other way, and did not design to come any nearer to

the shore; upon which I stretched out to sea as much as I could,

resolving to speak with them if possible.

With all the sail I could make, I found I should not be able to

come in their way, but that they would be gone by before I could

make any signal to them: but after I had crowded to the utmost, and

began to despair, they, it seems, saw by the help of their glasses

that it was some European boat, which they supposed must belong to

some ship that was lost; so they shortened sail to let me come up.

I was encouraged with this, and as I had my patron's ancient on

board, I made a waft of it to them, for a signal of distress, and

fired a gun, both which they saw; for they told me they saw the

smoke, though they did not hear the gun. Upon these signals they

very kindly brought to, and lay by for me; and in about three

hours; time I came up with them.

They asked me what I was, in Portuguese, and in Spanish, and in

French, but I understood none of them; but at last a Scotch sailor,

who was on board, called to me: and I answered him, and told him I

was an Englishman, that I had made my escape out of slavery from

the Moors, at Sallee; they then bade me come on board, and very

kindly took me in, and all my goods.

It was an inexpressible joy to me, which any one will believe, that

I was thus delivered, as I esteemed it, from such a miserable and

almost hopeless condition as I was in; and I immediately offered

all I had to the captain of the ship, as a return for my

deliverance; but he generously told me he would take nothing from

me, but that all I had should be delivered safe to me when I came

to the Brazils. "For," says he, "I have saved your life on no

other terms than I would be glad to be saved myself: and it may,

one time or other, be my lot to be taken up in the same condition.

Besides," said he, "when I carry you to the Brazils, so great a way

from your own country, if I should take from you what you have, you

will be starved there, and then I only take away that life I have

given. No, no," says he: "Seignior Inglese" (Mr. Englishman), "I

will carry you thither in charity, and those things will help to

buy your subsistence there, and your passage home again."

As he was charitable in this proposal, so he was just in the

performance to a tittle; for he ordered the seamen that none should

touch anything that I had: then he took everything into his own

possession, and gave me back an exact inventory of them, that I

might have them, even to my three earthen jars.

As to my boat, it was a very good one; and that he saw, and told me

he would buy it of me for his ship's use; and asked me what I would

have for it? I told him he had been so generous to me in

everything that I could not offer to make any price of the boat,

but left it entirely to him: upon which he told me he would give me

a note of hand to pay me eighty pieces of eight for it at Brazil;

and when it came there, if any one offered to give more, he would

make it up. He offered me also sixty pieces of eight more for my

boy Xury, which I was loth to take; not that I was unwilling to let

the captain have him, but I was very loth to sell the poor boy's

liberty, who had assisted me so faithfully in procuring my own.

However, when I let him know my reason, he owned it to be just, and

offered me this medium, that he would give the boy an obligation to

set him free in ten years, if he turned Christian: upon this, and

Xury saying he was willing to go to him, I let the captain have

him.

We had a very good voyage to the Brazils, and I arrived in the Bay

de Todos los Santos, or All Saints' Bay, in about twenty-two days

after. And now I was once more delivered from the most miserable

of all conditions of life; and what to do next with myself I was to

consider.

The generous treatment the captain gave me I can never enough

remember: he would take nothing of me for my passage, gave me

twenty ducats for the leopard's skin, and forty for the lion's

skin, which I had in my boat, and caused everything I had in the

ship to be punctually delivered to me; and what I was willing to

sell he bought of me, such as the case of bottles, two of my guns,

and a piece of the lump of beeswax - for I had made candles of the

rest: in a word, I made about two hundred and twenty pieces of

eight of all my cargo; and with this stock I went on shore in the

Brazils.

I had not been long here before I was recommended to the house of a

good honest man like himself, who had an INGENIO, as they call it

(that is, a plantation and a sugar-house). I lived with him some

time, and acquainted myself by that means with the manner of

planting and making of sugar; and seeing how well the planters

lived, and how they got rich suddenly, I resolved, if I could get a

licence to settle there, I would turn planter among them: resolving

in the meantime to find out some way to get my money, which I had

left in London, remitted to me. To this purpose, getting a kind of

letter of naturalisation, I purchased as much land that was uncured

as my money would reach, and formed a plan for my plantation and

settlement; such a one as might be suitable to the stock which I

proposed to myself to receive from England.

I had a neighbour, a Portuguese, of Lisbon, but born of English

parents, whose name was Wells, and in much such circumstances as I

was. I call him my neighbour, because his plantation lay next to

mine, and we went on very sociably together. My stock was but low,

as well as his; and we rather planted for food than anything else,

for about two years. However, we began to increase, and our land

began to come into order; so that the third year we planted some

tobacco, and made each of us a large piece of ground ready for

planting canes in the year to come. But we both wanted help; and

now I found, more than before, I had done wrong in parting with my

boy Xury.

But, alas! for me to do wrong that never did right, was no great

wonder. I hail no remedy but to go on: I had got into an

employment quite remote to my genius, and directly contrary to the

life I delighted in, and for which I forsook my father's house, and

broke through all his good advice. Nay, I was coming into the very

middle station, or upper degree of low life, which my father

advised me to before, and which, if I resolved to go on with, I

might as well have stayed at home, and never have fatigued myself

in the world as I had done; and I used often to say to myself, I

could have done this as well in England, among my friends, as have

gone five thousand miles off to do it among strangers and savages,

in a wilderness, and at such a distance as never to hear from any

part of the world that had the least knowledge of me.

In this manner I used to look upon my condition with the utmost

regret. I had nobody to converse with, but now and then this

neighbour; no work to be done, but by the labour of my hands; and I

used to say, I lived just like a man cast away upon some desolate

island, that had nobody there but himself. But how just has it

been - and how should all men reflect, that when they compare their

present conditions with others that are worse, Heaven may oblige

them to make the exchange, and be convinced of their former

felicity by their experience - I say, how just has it been, that

the truly solitary life I reflected on, in an island of mere

desolation, should be my lot, who had so often unjustly compared it

with the life which I then led, in which, had I continued, I had in

all probability been exceeding prosperous and rich.

I was in some degree settled in my measures for carrying on the

plantation before my kind friend, the captain of the ship that took

me up at sea, went back - for the ship remained there, in providing

his lading and preparing for his voyage, nearly three months - when

telling him what little stock I had left behind me in London, he

gave me this friendly and sincere advice:- "Seignior Inglese," says

he (for so he always called me), "if you will give me letters, and

a procuration in form to me, with orders to the person who has your

money in London to send your effects to Lisbon, to such persons as

I shall direct, and in such goods as are proper for this country, I

will bring you the produce of them, God willing, at my return; but,

since human affairs are all subject to changes and disasters, I

would have you give orders but for one hundred pounds sterling,

which, you say, is half your stock, and let the hazard be run for

the first; so that, if it come safe, you may order the rest the

same way, and, if it miscarry, you may have the other half to have

recourse to for your supply."

This was so wholesome advice, and looked so friendly, that I could

not but be convinced it was the best course I could take; so I

accordingly prepared letters to the gentlewoman with whom I had

left my money, and a procuration to the Portuguese captain, as he

desired.

I wrote the English captain's widow a full account of all my

adventures - my slavery, escape, and how I had met with the

Portuguese captain at sea, the humanity of his behaviour, and what

condition I was now in, with all other necessary directions for my

supply; and when this honest captain came to Lisbon, he found

means, by some of the English merchants there, to send over, not

the order only, but a full account of my story to a merchant in

London, who represented it effectually to her; whereupon she not

only delivered the money, but out of her own pocket sent the

Portugal captain a very handsome present for his humanity and

charity to me.

The merchant in London, vesting this hundred pounds in English

goods, such as the captain had written for, sent them directly to

him at Lisbon, and he brought them all safe to me to the Brazils;

among which, without my direction (for I was too young in my

business to think of them), he had taken care to have all sorts of

tools, ironwork, and utensils necessary for my plantation, and

which were of great use to me.

When this cargo arrived I thought my fortune made, for I was

surprised with the joy of it; and my stood steward, the captain,

had laid out the five pounds, which my friend had sent him for a

present for himself, to purchase and bring me over a servant, under

bond for six years' service, and would not accept of any

consideration, except a little tobacco, which I would have him

accept, being of my own produce.

Neither was this all; for my goods being all English manufacture,

such as cloths, stuffs, baize, and things particularly valuable and

desirable in the country, I found means to sell them to a very

great advantage; so that I might say I had more than four times the

value of my first cargo, and was now infinitely beyond my poor

neighbour - I mean in the advancement of my plantation; for the

first thing I did, I bought me a negro slave, and an European

servant also - I mean another besides that which the captain

brought me from Lisbon.

But as abused prosperity is oftentimes made the very means of our

greatest adversity, so it was with me. I went on the next year

with great success in my plantation: I raised fifty great rolls of

tobacco on my own ground, more than I had disposed of for

necessaries among my neighbours; and these fifty rolls, being each

of above a hundredweight, were well cured, and laid by against the

return of the fleet from Lisbon: and now increasing in business and

wealth, my head began to be full of projects and undertakings

beyond my reach; such as are, indeed, often the ruin of the best

heads in business. Had I continued in the station I was now in, I

had room for all the happy things to have yet befallen me for which

my father so earnestly recommended a quiet, retired life, and of

which he had so sensibly described the middle station of life to be

full of; but other things attended me, and I was still to be the

wilful agent of all my own miseries; and particularly, to increase

my fault, and double the reflections upon myself, which in my

future sorrows I should have leisure to make, all these

miscarriages were procured by my apparent obstinate adhering to my

foolish inclination of wandering abroad, and pursuing that

inclination, in contradiction to the clearest views of doing myself

good in a fair and plain pursuit of those prospects, and those

measures of life, which nature and Providence concurred to present

me with, and to make my duty.

As I had once done thus in my breaking away from my parents, so I

could not be content now, but I must go and leave the happy view I

had of being a rich and thriving man in my new plantation, only to

pursue a rash and immoderate desire of rising faster than the

nature of the thing admitted; and thus I cast myself down again

into the deepest gulf of human misery that ever man fell into, or

perhaps could be consistent with life and a state of health in the

world.

To come, then, by the just degrees to the particulars of this part

of my story. You may suppose, that having now lived almost four

years in the Brazils, and beginning to thrive and prosper very well

upon my plantation, I had not only learned the language, but had

contracted acquaintance and friendship among my fellow-planters, as

well as among the merchants at St. Salvador, which was our port;

and that, in my discourses among them, I had frequently given them

an account of my two voyages to the coast of Guinea: the manner of

trading with the negroes there, and how easy it was to purchase

upon the coast for trifles - such as beads, toys, knives, scissors,

hatchets, bits of glass, and the like - not only gold-dust, Guinea

grains, elephants' teeth, &c., but negroes, for the service of the

Brazils, in great numbers.

They listened always very attentively to my discourses on these

heads, but especially to that part which related to the buying of

negroes, which was a trade at that time, not only not far entered

into, but, as far as it was, had been carried on by assientos, or

permission of the kings of Spain and Portugal, and engrossed in the

public stock: so that few negroes were bought, and these

excessively dear.

It happened, being in company with some merchants and planters of

my acquaintance, and talking of those things very earnestly, three

of them came to me next morning, and told me they had been musing

very much upon what I had discoursed with them of the last night,

and they came to make a secret proposal to me; and, after enjoining

me to secrecy, they told me that they had a mind to fit out a ship

to go to Guinea; that they had all plantations as well as I, and

were straitened for nothing so much as servants; that as it was a

trade that could not be carried on, because they could not publicly

sell the negroes when they came home, so they desired to make but

one voyage, to bring the negroes on shore privately, and divide

them among their own plantations; and, in a word, the question was

whether I would go their supercargo in the ship, to manage the

trading part upon the coast of Guinea; and they offered me that I

should have my equal share of the negroes, without providing any

part of the stock.

This was a fair proposal, it must be confessed, had it been made to

any one that had not had a settlement and a plantation of his own

to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very

considerable, and with a good stock upon it; but for me, that was

thus entered and established, and had nothing to do but to go on as

I had begun, for three or four years more, and to have sent for the

other hundred pounds from England; and who in that time, and with

that little addition, could scarce have failed of being worth three

or four thousand pounds sterling, and that increasing too - for me

to think of such a voyage was the most preposterous thing that ever

man in such circumstances could be guilty of.

But I, that was born to be my own destroyer, could no more resist

the offer than I could restrain my first rambling designs when my

father' good counsel was lost upon me. In a word, I told them I

would go with all my heart, if they would undertake to look after

my plantation in my absence, and would dispose of it to such as I

should direct, if I miscarried. This they all engaged to do, and

entered into writings or covenants to do so; and I made a formal

will, disposing of my plantation and effects in case of my death,

making the captain of the ship that had saved my life, as before,

my universal heir, but obliging him to dispose of my effects as I

had directed in my will; one half of the produce being to himself,

and the other to be shipped to England.

In short, I took all possible caution to preserve my effects and to

keep up my plantation. Had I used half as much prudence to have

looked into my own interest, and have made a judgment of what I

ought to have done and not to have done, I had certainly never gone

away from so prosperous an undertaking, leaving all the probable

views of a thriving circumstance, and gone upon a voyage to sea,

attended with all its common hazards, to say nothing of the reasons

I had to expect particular misfortunes to myself.

But I was hurried on, and obeyed blindly the dictates of my fancy

rather than my reason; and, accordingly, the ship being fitted out,

and the cargo furnished, and all things done, as by agreement, by

my partners in the voyage, I went on board in an evil hour, the 1st

September 1659, being the same day eight years that I went from my

father and mother at Hull, in order to act the rebel to their

authority, and the fool to my own interests.

Our ship was about one hundred and twenty tons burden, carried six

guns and fourteen men, besides the master, his boy, and myself. We

had on board no large cargo of goods, except of such toys as were

fit for our trade with the negroes, such as beads, bits of glass,

shells, and other trifles, especially little looking-glasses,

knives, scissors, hatchets, and the like.

The same day I went on board we set sail, standing away to the

northward upon our own coast, with design to stretch over for the

African coast when we came about ten or twelve degrees of northern

latitude, which, it seems, was the manner of course in those days.

We had very good weather, only excessively hot, all the way upon

our own coast, till we came to the height of Cape St. Augustino;

from whence, keeping further off at sea, we lost sight of land, and

steered as if we were bound for the isle Fernando de Noronha,

holding our course N.E. by N., and leaving those isles on the east.

In this course we passed the line in about twelve days' time, and

were, by our last observation, in seven degrees twenty-two minutes

northern latitude, when a violent tornado, or hurricane, took us

quite out of our knowledge. It began from the south-east, came

about to the north-west, and then settled in the north-east; from

whence it blew in such a terrible manner, that for twelve days

together we could do nothing but drive, and, scudding away before

it, let it carry us whither fate and the fury of the winds

directed; and, during these twelve days, I need not say that I

expected every day to be swallowed up; nor, indeed, did any in the

ship expect to save their lives.

In this distress we had, besides the terror of the storm, one of

our men die of the calenture, and one man and the boy washed

overboard. About the twelfth day, the weather abating a little,

the master made an observation as well as he could, and found that

he was in about eleven degrees north latitude, but that he was

twenty-two degrees of longitude difference west from Cape St.

Augustino; so that he found he was upon the coast of Guiana, or the

north part of Brazil, beyond the river Amazon, toward that of the

river Orinoco, commonly called the Great River; and began to

consult with me what course he should take, for the ship was leaky,

and very much disabled, and he was going directly back to the coast

of Brazil.

I was positively against that; and looking over the charts of the

sea-coast of America with him, we concluded there was no inhabited

country for us to have recourse to till we came within the circle

of the Caribbee Islands, and therefore resolved to stand away for

Barbadoes; which, by keeping off at sea, to avoid the indraft of

the Bay or Gulf of Mexico, we might easily perform, as we hoped, in

about fifteen days' sail; whereas we could not possibly make our

voyage to the coast of Africa without some assistance both to our

ship and to ourselves.

With this design we changed our course, and steered away N.W. by

W., in order to reach some of our English islands, where I hoped

for relief. But our voyage was otherwise determined; for, being in

the latitude of twelve degrees eighteen minutes, a second storm

came upon us, which carried us away with the same impetuosity

westward, and drove us so out of the way of all human commerce,

that, had all our lives been saved as to the sea, we were rather in

danger of being devoured by savages than ever returning to our own

country.

In this distress, the wind still blowing very hard, one of our men

early in the morning cried out, "Land!" and we had no sooner run

out of the cabin to look out, in hopes of seeing whereabouts in the

world we were, than the ship struck upon a sand, and in a moment

her motion being so stopped, the sea broke over her in such a

manner that we expected we should all have perished immediately;

and we were immediately driven into our close quarters, to shelter

us from the very foam and spray of the sea.

It is not easy for any one who has not been in the like condition

to describe or conceive the consternation of men in such

circumstances. We knew nothing where we were, or upon what land it

was we were driven - whether an island or the main, whether

inhabited or not inhabited. As the rage of the wind was still

great, though rather less than at first, we could not so much as

hope to have the ship hold many minutes without breaking into

pieces, unless the winds, by a kind of miracle, should turn

immediately about. In a word, we sat looking upon one another, and

expecting death every moment, and every man, accordingly, preparing

for another world; for there was little or nothing more for us to

do in this. That which was our present comfort, and all the

comfort we had, was that, contrary to our expectation, the ship did

not break yet, and that the master said the wind began to abate.

Now, though we thought that the wind did a little abate, yet the

ship having thus struck upon the sand, and sticking too fast for us

to expect her getting off, we were in a dreadful condition indeed,

and had nothing to do but to think of saving our lives as well as

we could. We had a boat at our stern just before the storm, but

she was first staved by dashing against the ship's rudder, and in

the next place she broke away, and either sunk or was driven off to

sea; so there was no hope from her. We had another boat on board,

but how to get her off into the sea was a doubtful thing. However,

there was no time to debate, for we fancied that the ship would

break in pieces every minute, and some told us she was actually

broken already.

In this distress the mate of our vessel laid hold of the boat, and

with the help of the rest of the men got her slung over the ship's

side; and getting all into her, let go, and committed ourselves,

being eleven in number, to God's mercy and the wild sea; for though

the storm was abated considerably, yet the sea ran dreadfully high

upon the shore, and might be well called DEN WILD ZEE, as the Dutch

call the sea in a storm.

And now our case was very dismal indeed; for we all saw plainly

that the sea went so high that the boat could not live, and that we

should be inevitably drowned. As to making sail, we had none, nor

if we had could we have done anything with it; so we worked at the

oar towards the land, though with heavy hearts, like men going to

execution; for we all knew that when the boat came near the shore

she would be dashed in a thousand pieces by the breach of the sea.

However, we committed our souls to God in the most earnest manner;

and the wind driving us towards the shore, we hastened our

destruction with our own hands, pulling as well as we could towards

land.

What the shore was, whether rock or sand, whether steep or shoal,

we knew not. The only hope that could rationally give us the least

shadow of expectation was, if we might find some bay or gulf, or

the mouth of some river, where by great chance we might have run

our boat in, or got under the lee of the land, and perhaps made

smooth water. But there was nothing like this appeared; but as we

made nearer and nearer the shore, the land looked more frightful

than the sea.

After we had rowed, or rather driven about a league and a half, as

we reckoned it, a raging wave, mountain-like, came rolling astern

of us, and plainly bade us expect the COUP DE GRACE. It took us

with such a fury, that it overset the boat at once; and separating

us as well from the boat as from one another, gave us no time to

say, "O God!" for we were all swallowed up in a moment.

Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt when I

sank into the water; for though I swam very well, yet I could not

deliver myself from the waves so as to draw breath, till that wave

having driven me, or rather carried me, a vast way on towards the

shore, and having spent itself, went back, and left me upon the

land almost dry, but half dead with the water I took in. I had so

much presence of mind, as well as breath left, that seeing myself

nearer the mainland than I expected, I got upon my feet, and

endeavoured to make on towards the land as fast as I could before

another wave should return and take me up again; but I soon found

it was impossible to avoid it; for I saw the sea come after me as

high as a great hill, and as furious as an enemy, which I had no

means or strength to contend with: my business was to hold my

breath, and raise myself upon the water if I could; and so, by

swimming, to preserve my breathing, and pilot myself towards the

shore, if possible, my greatest concern now being that the sea, as

it would carry me a great way towards the shore when it came on,

might not carry me back again with it when it gave back towards the

sea.

The wave that came upon me again buried me at once twenty or thirty

feet deep in its own body, and I could feel myself carried with a

mighty force and swiftness towards the shore - a very great way;

but I held my breath, and assisted myself to swim still forward

with all my might. I was ready to burst with holding my breath,

when, as I felt myself rising up, so, to my immediate relief, I

found my head and hands shoot out above the surface of the water;

and though it was not two seconds of time that I could keep myself

so, yet it relieved me greatly, gave me breath, and new courage. I

was covered again with water a good while, but not so long but I

held it out; and finding the water had spent itself, and began to

return, I struck forward against the return of the waves, and felt

ground again with my feet. I stood still a few moments to recover

breath, and till the waters went from me, and then took to my heels

and ran with what strength I had further towards the shore. But

neither would this deliver me from the fury of the sea, which came

pouring in after me again; and twice more I was lifted up by the

waves and carried forward as before, the shore being very flat.

The last time of these two had well-nigh been fatal to me, for the

sea having hurried me along as before, landed me, or rather dashed

me, against a piece of rock, and that with such force, that it left

me senseless, and indeed helpless, as to my own deliverance; for

the blow taking my side and breast, beat the breath as it were

quite out of my body; and had it returned again immediately, I must

have been strangled in the water; but I recovered a little before

the return of the waves, and seeing I should be covered again with

the water, I resolved to hold fast by a piece of the rock, and so

to hold my breath, if possible, till the wave went back. Now, as

the waves were not so high as at first, being nearer land, I held

my hold till the wave abated, and then fetched another run, which

brought me so near the shore that the next wave, though it went

over me, yet did not so swallow me up as to carry me away; and the

next run I took, I got to the mainland, where, to my great comfort,

I clambered up the cliffs of the shore and sat me down upon the

grass, free from danger and quite out of the reach of the water.

I was now landed and safe on shore, and began to look up and thank

God that my life was saved, in a case wherein there was some

minutes before scarce any room to hope. I believe it is impossible

to express, to the life, what the ecstasies and transports of the

soul are, when it is so saved, as I may say, out of the very grave:

and I do not wonder now at the custom, when a malefactor, who has

the halter about his neck, is tied up, and just going to be turned

off, and has a reprieve brought to him - I say, I do not wonder

that they bring a surgeon with it, to let him blood that very

moment they tell him of it, that the surprise may not drive the

animal spirits from the heart and overwhelm him.

"For sudden joys, like griefs, confound at first."

I walked about on the shore lifting up my hands, and my whole

being, as I may say, wrapped up in a contemplation of my

deliverance; making a thousand gestures and motions, which I cannot

describe; reflecting upon all my comrades that were drowned, and

that there should not be one soul saved but myself; for, as for

them, I never saw them afterwards, or any sign of them, except

three of their hats, one cap, and two shoes that were not fellows.

I cast my eye to the stranded vessel, when, the breach and froth of

the sea being so big, I could hardly see it, it lay so far of; and

considered, Lord! how was it possible I could get on shore

After I had solaced my mind with the comfortable part of my

condition, I began to look round me, to see what kind of place I

was in, and what was next to be done; and I soon found my comforts

abate, and that, in a word, I had a dreadful deliverance; for I was

wet, had no clothes to shift me, nor anything either to eat or

drink to comfort me; neither did I see any prospect before me but

that of perishing with hunger or being devoured by wild beasts; and

that which was particularly afflicting to me was, that I had no

weapon, either to hunt and kill any creature for my sustenance, or

to defend myself against any other creature that might desire to

kill me for theirs. In a word, I had nothing about me but a knife,

a tobacco-pipe, and a little tobacco in a box. This was all my

provisions; and this threw me into such terrible agonies of mind,

that for a while I ran about like a madman. Night coming upon me,

I began with a heavy heart to consider what would be my lot if

there were any ravenous beasts in that country, as at night they

always come abroad for their prey.

All the remedy that offered to my thoughts at that time was to get

up into a thick bushy tree like a fir, but thorny, which grew near

me, and where I resolved to sit all night, and consider the next

day what death I should die, for as yet I saw no prospect of life.

I walked about a furlong from the shore, to see if I could find any

fresh water to drink, which I did, to my great joy; and having

drank, and put a little tobacco into my mouth to prevent hunger, I

went to the tree, and getting up into it, endeavoured to place

myself so that if I should sleep I might not fall. And having cut

me a short stick, like a truncheon, for my defence, I took up my

lodging; and having been excessively fatigued, I fell fast asleep,

and slept as comfortably as, I believe, few could have done in my

condition, and found myself more refreshed with it than, I think, I

ever was on such an occasion.

CHAPTER IV - FIRST WEEKS ON THE ISLAND

WHEN I waked it was broad day, the weather clear, and the storm

abated, so that the sea did not rage and swell as before. But that

which surprised me most was, that the ship was lifted off in the

night from the sand where she lay by the swelling of the tide, and

was driven up almost as far as the rock which I at first mentioned,

where I had been so bruised by the wave dashing me against it.

This being within about a mile from the shore where I was, and the

ship seeming to stand upright still, I wished myself on board, that

at least I might save some necessary things for my use.

When I came down from my apartment in the tree, I looked about me

again, and the first thing I found was the boat, which lay, as the

wind and the sea had tossed her up, upon the land, about two miles

on my right hand. I walked as far as I could upon the shore to

have got to her; but found a neck or inlet of water between me and

the boat which was about half a mile broad; so I came back for the

present, being more intent upon getting at the ship, where I hoped

to find something for my present subsistence.

A little after noon I found the sea very calm, and the tide ebbed

so far out that I could come within a quarter of a mile of the

ship. And here I found a fresh renewing of my grief; for I saw

evidently that if we had kept on board we had been all safe - that

is to say, we had all got safe on shore, and I had not been so

miserable as to be left entirety destitute of all comfort and

company as I now was. This forced tears to my eyes again; but as

there was little relief in that, I resolved, if possible, to get to

the ship; so I pulled off my clothes - for the weather was hot to

extremity - and took the water. But when I came to the ship my

difficulty was still greater to know how to get on board; for, as

she lay aground, and high out of the water, there was nothing

within my reach to lay hold of. I swam round her twice, and the

second time I spied a small piece of rope, which I wondered I did

not see at first, hung down by the fore-chains so low, as that with

great difficulty I got hold of it, and by the help of that rope I

got up into the forecastle of the ship. Here I found that the ship

was bulged, and had a great deal of water in her hold, but that she

lay so on the side of a bank of hard sand, or, rather earth, that

her stern lay lifted up upon the bank, and her head low, almost to

the water. By this means all her quarter was free, and all that

was in that part was dry; for you may be sure my first work was to

search, and to see what was spoiled and what was free. And, first,

I found that all the ship's provisions were dry and untouched by

the water, and being very well disposed to eat, I went to the bread

room and filled my pockets with biscuit, and ate it as I went about

other things, for I had no time to lose. I also found some rum in

the great cabin, of which I took a large dram, and which I had,

indeed, need enough of to spirit me for what was before me. Now I

wanted nothing but a boat to furnish myself with many things which

I foresaw would be very necessary to me.

It was in vain to sit still and wish for what was not to be had;

and this extremity roused my application. We had several spare

yards, and two or three large spars of wood, and a spare topmast or

two in the ship; I resolved to fall to work with these, and I flung

as many of them overboard as I could manage for their weight, tying

every one with a rope, that they might not drive away. When this

was done I went down the ship's side, and pulling them to me, I

tied four of them together at both ends as well as I could, in the

form of a raft, and laying two or three short pieces of plank upon

them crossways, I found I could walk upon it very well, but that it

was not able to bear any great weight, the pieces being too light.

So I went to work, and with a carpenter's saw I cut a spare topmast

into three lengths, and added them to my raft, with a great deal of

labour and pains. But the hope of furnishing myself with

necessaries encouraged me to go beyond what I should have been able

to have done upon another occasion.

My raft was now strong enough to bear any reasonable weight. My

next care was what to load it with, and how to preserve what I laid

upon it from the surf of the sea; but I was not long considering

this. I first laid all the planks or boards upon it that I could

get, and having considered well what I most wanted, I got three of

the seamen's chests, which I had broken open, and emptied, and

lowered them down upon my raft; the first of these I filled with

provisions - viz. bread, rice, three Dutch cheeses, five pieces of

dried goat's flesh (which we lived much upon), and a little

remainder of European corn, which had been laid by for some fowls

which we brought to sea with us, but the fowls were killed. There

had been some barley and wheat together; but, to my great

disappointment, I found afterwards that the rats had eaten or

spoiled it all. As for liquors, I found several, cases of bottles

belonging to our skipper, in which were some cordial waters; and,

in all, about five or six gallons of rack. These I stowed by

themselves, there being no need to put them into the chest, nor any

room for them. While I was doing this, I found the tide begin to

flow, though very calm; and I had the mortification to see my coat,

shirt, and waistcoat, which I had left on the shore, upon the sand,

swim away. As for my breeches, which were only linen, and open-

kneed, I swam on board in them and my stockings. However, this set

me on rummaging for clothes, of which I found enough, but took no

more than I wanted for present use, for I had others things which

my eye was more upon - as, first, tools to work with on shore. And

it was after long searching that I found out the carpenter's chest,

which was, indeed, a very useful prize to me, and much more

valuable than a shipload of gold would have been at that time. I

got it down to my raft, whole as it was, without losing time to

look into it, for I knew in general what it contained.

My next care was for some ammunition and arms. There were two very

good fowling-pieces in the great cabin, and two pistols. These I

secured first, with some powder-horns and a small bag of shot, and

two old rusty swords. I knew there were three barrels of powder in

the ship, but knew not where our gunner had stowed them; but with

much search I found them, two of them dry and good, the third had

taken water. Those two I got to my raft with the arms. And now I

thought myself pretty well freighted, and began to think how I

should get to shore with them, having neither sail, oar, nor

rudder; and the least capful of wind would have overset all my

navigation.

I had three encouragements - 1st, a smooth, calm sea; 2ndly, the

tide rising, and setting in to the shore; 3rdly, what little wind

there was blew me towards the land. And thus, having found two or

three broken oars belonging to the boat - and, besides the tools

which were in the chest, I found two saws, an axe, and a hammer;

with this cargo I put to sea. For a mile or thereabouts my raft

went very well, only that I found it drive a little distant from

the place where I had landed before; by which I perceived that

there was some indraft of the water, and consequently I hoped to

find some creek or river there, which I might make use of as a port

to get to land with my cargo.

As I imagined, so it was. There appeared before me a little

opening of the land, and I found a strong current of the tide set

into it; so I guided my raft as well as I could, to keep in the

middle of the stream.

But here I had like to have suffered a second shipwreck, which, if

I had, I think verily would have broken my heart; for, knowing

nothing of the coast, my raft ran aground at one end of it upon a

shoal, and not being aground at the other end, it wanted but a

little that all my cargo had slipped off towards the end that was

afloat, and to fallen into the water. I did my utmost, by setting

my back against the chests, to keep them in their places, but could

not thrust off the raft with all my strength; neither durst I stir

from the posture I was in; but holding up the chests with all my

might, I stood in that manner near half-an-hour, in which time the

rising of the water brought me a little more upon a level; and a

little after, the water still-rising, my raft floated again, and I

thrust her off with the oar I had into the channel, and then

driving up higher, I at length found myself in the mouth of a

little river, with land on both sides, and a strong current of tide

running up. I looked on both sides for a proper place to get to

shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high up the river:

hoping in time to see some ships at sea, and therefore resolved to

place myself as near the coast as I could.

At length I spied a little cove on the right shore of the creek, to

which with great pain and difficulty I guided my raft, and at last

got so near that, reaching ground with my oar, I could thrust her

directly in. But here I had like to have dipped all my cargo into

the sea again; for that shore lying pretty steep - that is to say

sloping - there was no place to land, but where one end of my

float, if it ran on shore, would lie so high, and the other sink

lower, as before, that it would endanger my cargo again. All that

I could do was to wait till the tide was at the highest, keeping

the raft with my oar like an anchor, to hold the side of it fast to

the shore, near a flat piece of ground, which I expected the water

would flow over; and so it did. As soon as I found water enough -

for my raft drew about a foot of water - I thrust her upon that

flat piece of ground, and there fastened or moored her, by sticking

my two broken oars into the ground, one on one side near one end,

and one on the other side near the other end; and thus I lay till

the water ebbed away, and left my raft and all my cargo safe on

shore.

My next work was to view the country, and seek a proper place for

my habitation, and where to stow my goods to secure them from

whatever might happen. Where I was, I yet knew not; whether on the

continent or on an island; whether inhabited or not inhabited;

whether in danger of wild beasts or not. There was a hill not

above a mile from me, which rose up very steep and high, and which

seemed to overtop some other hills, which lay as in a ridge from it

northward. I took out one of the fowling-pieces, and one of the

pistols, and a horn of powder; and thus armed, I travelled for

discovery up to the top of that hill, where, after I had with great

labour and difficulty got to the top, I saw any fate, to my great

affliction - viz. that I was in an island environed every way with

the sea: no land to be seen except some rocks, which lay a great

way off; and two small islands, less than this, which lay about

three leagues to the west.

I found also that the island I was in was barren, and, as I saw

good reason to believe, uninhabited except by wild beasts, of whom,

however, I saw none. Yet I saw abundance of fowls, but knew not

their kinds; neither when I killed them could I tell what was fit

for food, and what not. At my coming back, I shot at a great bird

which I saw sitting upon a tree on the side of a great wood. I

believe it was the first gun that had been fired there since the

creation of the world. I had no sooner fired, than from all parts

of the wood there arose an innumerable number of fowls, of many

sorts, making a confused screaming and crying, and every one

according to his usual note, but not one of them of any kind that I

knew. As for the creature I killed, I took it to be a kind of

hawk, its colour and beak resembling it, but it had no talons or

claws more than common. Its flesh was carrion, and fit for

nothing.

Contented with this discovery, I came back to my raft, and fell to

work to bring my cargo on shore, which took me up the rest of that

day. What to do with myself at night I knew not, nor indeed where

to rest, for I was afraid to lie down on the ground, not knowing

but some wild beast might devour me, though, as I afterwards found,

there was really no need for those fears.

However, as well as I could, I barricaded myself round with the

chest and boards that I had brought on shore, and made a kind of

hut for that night's lodging. As for food, I yet saw not which way

to supply myself, except that I had seen two or three creatures

like hares run out of the wood where I shot the fowl.

I now began to consider that I might yet get a great many things

out of the ship which would be useful to me, and particularly some

of the rigging and sails, and such other things as might come to

land; and I resolved to make another voyage on board the vessel, if

possible. And as I knew that the first storm that blew must

necessarily break her all in pieces, I resolved to set all other

things apart till I had got everything out of the ship that I could

get. Then I called a council - that is to say in my thoughts -

whether I should take back the raft; but this appeared

impracticable: so I resolved to go as before, when the tide was

down; and I did so, only that I stripped before I went from my hut,

having nothing on but my chequered shirt, a pair of linen drawers,

and a pair of pumps on my feet.

I got on board the ship as before, and prepared a second raft; and,

having had experience of the first, I neither made this so

unwieldy, nor loaded it so hard, but yet I brought away several

things very useful to me; as first, in the carpenters stores I

found two or three bags full of nails and spikes, a great screw-

jack, a dozen or two of hatchets, and, above all, that most useful

thing called a grindstone. All these I secured, together with

several things belonging to the gunner, particularly two or three

iron crows, and two barrels of musket bullets, seven muskets,

another fowling-piece, with some small quantity of powder more; a

large bagful of small shot, and a great roll of sheet-lead; but

this last was so heavy, I could not hoist it up to get it over the

ship's side.

Besides these things, I took all the men's clothes that I could

find, and a spare fore-topsail, a hammock, and some bedding; and

with this I loaded my second raft, and brought them all safe on

shore, to my very great comfort.

I was under some apprehension, during my absence from the land,

that at least my provisions might be devoured on shore: but when I

came back I found no sign of any visitor; only there sat a creature

like a wild cat upon one of the chests, which, when I came towards

it, ran away a little distance, and then stood still. She sat very

composed and unconcerned, and looked full in my face, as if she had

a mind to be acquainted with me. I presented my gun at her, but,

as she did not understand it, she was perfectly unconcerned at it,

nor did she offer to stir away; upon which I tossed her a bit of

biscuit, though by the way, I was not very free of it, for my store

was not great: however, I spared her a bit, I say, and she went to

it, smelled at it, and ate it, and looked (as if pleased) for more;

but I thanked her, and could spare no more: so she marched off.

Having got my second cargo on shore - though I was fain to open the

barrels of powder, and bring them by parcels, for they were too

heavy, being large casks - I went to work to make me a little tent

with the sail and some poles which I cut for that purpose: and into

this tent I brought everything that I knew would spoil either with

rain or sun; and I piled all the empty chests and casks up in a

circle round the tent, to fortify it from any sudden attempt,

either from man or beast.

When I had done this, I blocked up the door of the tent with some

boards within, and an empty chest set up on end without; and

spreading one of the beds upon the ground, laying my two pistols

just at my head, and my gun at length by me, I went to bed for the

first time, and slept very quietly all night, for I was very weary

and heavy; for the night before I had slept little, and had

laboured very hard all day to fetch all those things from the ship,

and to get them on shore.

I had the biggest magazine of all kinds now that ever was laid up,

I believe, for one man: but I was not satisfied still, for while

the ship sat upright in that posture, I thought I ought to get

everything out of her that I could; so every day at low water I

went on board, and brought away something or other; but

particularly the third time I went I brought away as much of the

rigging as I could, as also all the small ropes and rope-twine I

could get, with a piece of spare canvas, which was to mend the

sails upon occasion, and the barrel of wet gunpowder. In a word, I

brought away all the sails, first and last; only that I was fain to

cut them in pieces, and bring as much at a time as I could, for

they were no more useful to be sails, but as mere canvas only.

But that which comforted me more still, was, that last of all,

after I had made five or six such voyages as these, and thought I

had nothing more to expect from the ship that was worth my meddling

with - I say, after all this, I found a great hogshead of bread,

three large runlets of rum, or spirits, a box of sugar, and a

barrel of fine flour; this was surprising to me, because I had

given over expecting any more provisions, except what was spoiled

by the water. I soon emptied the hogshead of the bread, and

wrapped it up, parcel by parcel, in pieces of the sails, which I

cut out; and, in a word, I got all this safe on shore also.

The next day I made another voyage, and now, having plundered the

ship of what was portable and fit to hand out, I began with the

cables. Cutting the great cable into pieces, such as I could move,

I got two cables and a hawser on shore, with all the ironwork I

could get; and having cut down the spritsail-yard, and the mizzen-

yard, and everything I could, to make a large raft, I loaded it

with all these heavy goods, and came away. But my good luck began

now to leave me; for this raft was so unwieldy, and so overladen,

that, after I had entered the little cove where I had landed the

rest of my goods, not being able to guide it so handily as I did

the other, it overset, and threw me and all my cargo into the

water. As for myself, it was no great harm, for I was near the

shore; but as to my cargo, it was a great part of it lost,

especially the iron, which I expected would have been of great use

to me; however, when the tide was out, I got most of the pieces of

the cable ashore, and some of the iron, though with infinite

labour; for I was fain to dip for it into the water, a work which

fatigued me very much. After this, I went every day on board, and

brought away what I could get.

I had been now thirteen days on shore, and had been eleven times on

board the ship, in which time I had brought away all that one pair

of hands could well be supposed capable to bring; though I believe

verily, had the calm weather held, I should have brought away the

whole ship, piece by piece. But preparing the twelfth time to go

on board, I found the wind began to rise: however, at low water I

went on board, and though I thought I had rummaged the cabin so

effectually that nothing more could be found, yet I discovered a

locker with drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three

razors, and one pair of large scissors, with some ten or a dozen of

good knives and forks: in another I found about thirty-six pounds

value in money - some European coin, some Brazil, some pieces of

eight, some gold, and some silver.

I smiled to myself at the sight of this money: "O drug!" said I,

aloud, "what art thou good for? Thou art not worth to me - no, not

the taking off the ground; one of those knives is worth all this

heap; I have no manner of use for thee - e'en remain where thou

art, and go to the bottom as a creature whose life is not worth

saying." However, upon second thoughts I took it away; and

wrapping all this in a piece of canvas, I began to think of making

another raft; but while I was preparing this, I found the sky

overcast, and the wind began to rise, and in a quarter of an hour

it blew a fresh gale from the shore. It presently occurred to me

that it was in vain to pretend to make a raft with the wind

offshore; and that it was my business to be gone before the tide of

flood began, otherwise I might not be able to reach the shore at

all. Accordingly, I let myself down into the water, and swam

across the channel, which lay between the ship and the sands, and

even that with difficulty enough, partly with the weight of the

things I had about me, and partly the roughness of the water; for

the wind rose very hastily, and before it was quite high water it

blew a storm.

But I had got home to my little tent, where I lay, with all my

wealth about me, very secure. It blew very hard all night, and in

the morning, when I looked out, behold, no more ship was to be

seen! I was a little surprised, but recovered myself with the

satisfactory reflection that I had lost no time, nor abated any

diligence, to get everything out of her that could be useful to me;

and that, indeed, there was little left in her that I was able to

bring away, if I had had more time.

I now gave over any more thoughts of the ship, or of anything out

of her, except what might drive on shore from her wreck; as,

indeed, divers pieces of her afterwards did; but those things were

of small use to me.

My thoughts were now wholly employed about securing myself against

either savages, if any should appear, or wild beasts, if any were

in the island; and I had many thoughts of the method how to do

this, and what kind of dwelling to make - whether I should make me

a cave in the earth, or a tent upon the earth; and, in short, I

resolved upon both; the manner and description of which, it may not

be improper to give an account of.

I soon found the place I was in was not fit for my settlement,

because it was upon a low, moorish ground, near the sea, and I

believed it would not be wholesome, and more particularly because

there was no fresh water near it; so I resolved to find a more

healthy and more convenient spot of ground.

I consulted several things in my situation, which I found would he

proper for me: 1st, health and fresh water, I just now mentioned;

2ndly, shelter from the heat of the sun; 3rdly, security from

ravenous creatures, whether man or beast; 4thly, a view to the sea,

that if God sent any ship in sight, I might not lose any advantage

for my deliverance, of which I was not willing to banish all my

expectation yet.

In search of a place proper for this, I found a little plain on the

side of a rising hill, whose front towards this little plain was

steep as a house-side, so that nothing could come down upon me from

the top. On the one side of the rock there was a hollow place,

worn a little way in, like the entrance or door of a cave but there

was not really any cave or way into the rock at all.

On the flat of the green, just before this hollow place, I resolved

to pitch my tent. This plain was not above a hundred yards broad,

and about twice as long, and lay like a green before my door; and,

at the end of it, descended irregularly every way down into the low

ground by the seaside. It was on the N.N.W. side of the hill; so

that it was sheltered from the heat every day, till it came to a W.

and by S. sun, or thereabouts, which, in those countries, is near

the setting.

Before I set up my tent I drew a half-circle before the hollow

place, which took in about ten yards in its semi-diameter from the

rock, and twenty yards in its diameter from its beginning and

ending.

In this half-circle I pitched two rows of strong stakes, driving

them into the ground till they stood very firm like piles, the

biggest end being out of the ground above five feet and a half, and

sharpened on the top. The two rows did not stand above six inches

from one another.

Then I took the pieces of cable which I had cut in the ship, and

laid them in rows, one upon another, within the circle, between

these two rows of stakes, up to the top, placing other stakes in

the inside, leaning against them, about two feet and a half high,

like a spur to a post; and this fence was so strong, that neither

man nor beast could get into it or over it. This cost me a great

deal of time and labour, especially to cut the piles in the woods,

bring them to the place, and drive them into the earth.

The entrance into this place I made to be, not by a door, but by a

short ladder to go over the top; which ladder, when I was in, I

lifted over after me; and so I was completely fenced in and

fortified, as I thought, from all the world, and consequently slept

secure in the night, which otherwise I could not have done; though,

as it appeared afterwards, there was no need of all this caution

from the enemies that I apprehended danger from.

Into this fence or fortress, with infinite labour, I carried all my

riches, all my provisions, ammunition, and stores, of which you

have the account above; and I made a large tent, which to preserve

me from the rains that in one part of the year are very violent

there, I made double - one smaller tent within, and one larger tent

above it; and covered the uppermost with a large tarpaulin, which I

had saved among the sails.

And now I lay no more for a while in the bed which I had brought on

shore, but in a hammock, which was indeed a very good one, and

belonged to the mate of the ship.

Into this tent I brought all my provisions, and everything that

would spoil by the wet; and having thus enclosed all my goods, I

made up the entrance, which till now I had left open, and so passed

and repassed, as I said, by a short ladder.

When I had done this, I began to work my way into the rock, and

bringing all the earth and stones that I dug down out through my

tent, I laid them up within my fence, in the nature of a terrace,

so that it raised the ground within about a foot and a half; and

thus I made me a cave, just behind my tent, which served me like a

cellar to my house.

It cost me much labour and many days before all these things were

brought to perfection; and therefore I must go back to some other

things which took up some of my thoughts. At the same time it

happened, after I had laid my scheme for the setting up my tent,

and making the cave, that a storm of rain falling from a thick,

dark cloud, a sudden flash of lightning happened, and after that a

great clap of thunder, as is naturally the effect of it. I was not

so much surprised with the lightning as I was with the thought

which darted into my mind as swift as the lightning itself - Oh, my

powder! My very heart sank within me when I thought that, at one

blast, all my powder might be destroyed; on which, not my defence

only, but the providing my food, as I thought, entirely depended.

I was nothing near so anxious about my own danger, though, had the

powder took fire, I should never have known who had hurt me.

Such impression did this make upon me, that after the storm was

over I laid aside all my works, my building and fortifying, and

applied myself to make bags and boxes, to separate the powder, and

to keep it a little and a little in a parcel, in the hope that,

whatever might come, it might not all take fire at once; and to

keep it so apart that it should not be possible to make one part

fire another. I finished this work in about a fortnight; and I

think my powder, which in all was about two hundred and forty

pounds weight, was divided in not less than a hundred parcels. As

to the barrel that had been wet, I did not apprehend any danger

from that; so I placed it in my new cave, which, in my fancy, I

called my kitchen; and the rest I hid up and down in holes among

the rocks, so that no wet might come to it, marking very carefully

where I laid it.

In the interval of time while this was doing, I went out once at

least every day with my gun, as well to divert myself as to see if

I could kill anything fit for food; and, as near as I could, to

acquaint myself with what the island produced. The first time I

went out, I presently discovered that there were goats in the

island, which was a great satisfaction to me; but then it was

attended with this misfortune to me - viz. that they were so shy,

so subtle, and so swift of foot, that it was the most difficult

thing in the world to come at them; but I was not discouraged at

this, not doubting but I might now and then shoot one, as it soon

happened; for after I had found their haunts a little, I laid wait

in this manner for them: I observed if they saw me in the valleys,

though they were upon the rocks, they would run away, as in a

terrible fright; but if they were feeding in the valleys, and I was

upon the rocks, they took no notice of me; from whence I concluded

that, by the position of their optics, their sight was so directed

downward that they did not readily see objects that were above

them; so afterwards I took this method - I always climbed the rocks

first, to get above them, and then had frequently a fair mark.

The first shot I made among these creatures, I killed a she-goat,

which had a little kid by her, which she gave suck to, which

grieved me heartily; for when the old one fell, the kid stood stock

still by her, till I came and took her up; and not only so, but

when I carried the old one with me, upon my shoulders, the kid

followed me quite to my enclosure; upon which I laid down the dam,

and took the kid in my arms, and carried it over my pale, in hopes

to have bred it up tame; but it would not eat; so I was forced to

kill it and eat it myself. These two supplied me with flesh a

great while, for I ate sparingly, and saved my provisions, my bread

especially, as much as possibly I could.

Having now fixed my habitation, I found it absolutely necessary to

provide a place to make a fire in, and fuel to burn: and what I did

for that, and also how I enlarged my cave, and what conveniences I

made, I shall give a full account of in its place; but I must now

give some little account of myself, and of my thoughts about

living, which, it may well be supposed, were not a few.

I had a dismal prospect of my condition; for as I was not cast away

upon that island without being driven, as is said, by a violent

storm, quite out of the course of our intended voyage, and a great

way, viz. some hundreds of leagues, out of the ordinary course of

the trade of mankind, I had great reason to consider it as a

determination of Heaven, that in this desolate place, and in this

desolate manner, I should end my life. The tears would run

plentifully down my face when I made these reflections; and

sometimes I would expostulate with myself why Providence should

thus completely ruin His creatures, and render them so absolutely

miserable; so without help, abandoned, so entirely depressed, that

it could hardly be rational to be thankful for such a life.

But something always returned swift upon me to check these

thoughts, and to reprove me; and particularly one day, walking with

my gun in my hand by the seaside, I was very pensive upon the

subject of my present condition, when reason, as it were,

expostulated with me the other way, thus: "Well, you are in a

desolate condition, it is true; but, pray remember, where are the

rest of you? Did not you come, eleven of you in the boat? Where

are the ten? Why were they not saved, and you lost? Why were you

singled out? Is it better to be here or there?" And then I

pointed to the sea. All evils are to be considered with the good

that is in them, and with what worse attends them.

Then it occurred to me again, how well I was furnished for my

subsistence, and what would have been my case if it had not

happened (which was a hundred thousand to one) that the ship

floated from the place where she first struck, and was driven so

near to the shore that I had time to get all these things out of

her; what would have been my case, if I had been forced to have

lived in the condition in which I at first came on shore, without

necessaries of life, or necessaries to supply and procure them?

"Particularly," said I, aloud (though to myself), "what should I

have done without a gun, without ammunition, without any tools to

make anything, or to work with, without clothes, bedding, a tent,

or any manner of covering?" and that now I had all these to

sufficient quantity, and was in a fair way to provide myself in

such a manner as to live without my gun, when my ammunition was

spent: so that I had a tolerable view of subsisting, without any

want, as long as I lived; for I considered from the beginning how I

would provide for the accidents that might happen, and for the time

that was to come, even not only after my ammunition should be

spent, but even after my health and strength should decay.

I confess I had not entertained any notion of my ammunition being

destroyed at one blast - I mean my powder being blown up by

lightning; and this made the thoughts of it so surprising to me,

when it lightened and thundered, as I observed just now.

And now being about to enter into a melancholy relation of a scene

of silent life, such, perhaps, as was never heard of in the world

before, I shall take it from its beginning, and continue it in its

order. It was by my account the 30th of September, when, in the

manner as above said, I first set foot upon this horrid island;

when the sun, being to us in its autumnal equinox, was almost over

my head; for I reckoned myself, by observation, to be in the

latitude of nine degrees twenty-two minutes north of the line.

After I had been there about ten or twelve days, it came into my

thoughts that I should lose my reckoning of time for want of books,

and pen and ink, and should even forget the Sabbath days; but to

prevent this, I cut with my knife upon a large post, in capital

letters - and making it into a great cross, I set it up on the

shore where I first landed - "I came on shore here on the 30th

September 1659."

Upon the sides of this square post I cut every day a notch with my

knife, and every seventh notch was as long again as the rest, and

every first day of the month as long again as that long one; and

thus I kept my calendar, or weekly, monthly, and yearly reckoning

of time.

In the next place, we are to observe that among the many things

which I brought out of the ship, in the several voyages which, as

above mentioned, I made to it, I got several things of less value,

but not at all less useful to me, which I omitted setting down

before; as, in particular, pens, ink, and paper, several parcels in

the captain's, mate's, gunner's and carpenter's keeping; three or

four compasses, some mathematical instruments, dials, perspectives,

charts, and books of navigation, all which I huddled together,

whether I might want them or no; also, I found three very good

Bibles, which came to me in my cargo from England, and which I had

packed up among my things; some Portuguese books also; and among

them two or three Popish prayer-books, and several other books, all

which I carefully secured. And I must not forget that we had in

the ship a dog and two cats, of whose eminent history I may have

occasion to say something in its place; for I carried both the cats

with me; and as for the dog, he jumped out of the ship of himself,

and swam on shore to me the day after I went on shore with my first

cargo, and was a trusty servant to me many years; I wanted nothing

that he could fetch me, nor any company that he could make up to

me; I only wanted to have him talk to me, but that would not do.

As I observed before, I found pens, ink, and paper, and I husbanded

them to the utmost; and I shall show that while my ink lasted, I

kept things very exact, but after that was gone I could not, for I

could not make any ink by any means that I could devise.

And this put me in mind that I wanted many things notwithstanding

all that I had amassed together; and of these, ink was one; as also

a spade, pickaxe, and shovel, to dig or remove the earth; needles,

pins, and thread; as for linen, I soon learned to want that without

much difficulty.

This want of tools made every work I did go on heavily; and it was

near a whole year before I had entirely finished my little pale, or

surrounded my habitation. The piles, or stakes, which were as

heavy as I could well lift, were a long time in cutting and

preparing in the woods, and more, by far, in bringing home; so that

I spent sometimes two days in cutting and bringing home one of

those posts, and a third day in driving it into the ground; for

which purpose I got a heavy piece of wood at first, but at last

bethought myself of one of the iron crows; which, however, though I

found it, made driving those posts or piles very laborious and

tedious work. But what need I have been concerned at the

tediousness of anything I had to do, seeing I had time enough to do

it in? nor had I any other employment, if that had been over, at

least that I could foresee, except the ranging the island to seek

for food, which I did, more or less, every day.

I now began to consider seriously my condition, and the

circumstances I was reduced to; and I drew up the state of my

affairs in writing, not so much to leave them to any that were to

come after me - for I was likely to have but few heirs - as to

deliver my thoughts from daily poring over them, and afflicting my

mind; and as my reason began now to master my despondency, I began

to comfort myself as well as I could, and to set the good against

the evil, that I might have something to distinguish my case from

worse; and I stated very impartially, like debtor and creditor, the

comforts I enjoyed against the miseries I suffered, thus:-

Evil: I am cast upon a horrible, desolate island, void of all hope

of recovery.

Good: But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship's company

were.

Evil: I am singled out and separated, as it were, from all the

world, to be miserable.

Good: But I am singled out, too, from all the ship's crew, to be

spared from death; and He that miraculously saved me from death can

deliver me from this condition.

Evil: I am divided from mankind - a solitaire; one banished from

human society.

Good: But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place,

affording no sustenance.

Evil: I have no clothes to cover me.

Good: But I am in a hot climate, where, if I had clothes, I could

hardly wear them.

Evil: I am without any defence, or means to resist any violence of

man or beast.

Good: But I am cast on an island where I see no wild beasts to hurt

me, as I saw on the coast of Africa; and what if I had been

shipwrecked there?

Evil: I have no soul to speak to or relieve me.

Good: But God wonderfully sent the ship in near enough to the

shore, that I have got out as many necessary things as will either

supply my wants or enable me to supply myself, even as long as I

live.

Upon the whole, here was an undoubted testimony that there was

scarce any condition in the world so miserable but there was

something negative or something positive to be thankful for in it;

and let this stand as a direction from the experience of the most

miserable of all conditions in this world: that we may always find

in it something to comfort ourselves from, and to set, in the

description of good and evil, on the credit side of the account.

Having now brought my mind a little to relish my condition, and

given over looking out to sea, to see if I could spy a ship - I

say, giving over these things, I begun to apply myself to arrange

my way of living, and to make things as easy to me as I could.

I have already described my habitation, which was a tent under the

side of a rock, surrounded with a strong pale of posts and cables:

but I might now rather call it a wall, for I raised a kind of wall

up against it of turfs, about two feet thick on the outside; and

after some time (I think it was a year and a half) I raised rafters

from it, leaning to the rock, and thatched or covered it with

boughs of trees, and such things as I could get, to keep out the

rain; which I found at some times of the year very violent.

I have already observed how I brought all my goods into this pale,

and into the cave which I had made behind me. But I must observe,

too, that at first this was a confused heap of goods, which, as

they lay in no order, so they took up all my place; I had no room

to turn myself: so I set myself to enlarge my cave, and work

farther into the earth; for it was a loose sandy rock, which

yielded easily to the labour I bestowed on it: and so when I found

I was pretty safe as to beasts of prey, I worked sideways, to the

right hand, into the rock; and then, turning to the right again,

worked quite out, and made me a door to come out on the outside of

my pale or fortification. This gave me not only egress and

regress, as it was a back way to my tent and to my storehouse, but

gave me room to store my goods.

And now I began to apply myself to make such necessary things as I

found I most wanted, particularly a chair and a table; for without

these I was not able to enjoy the few comforts I had in the world;

I could not write or eat, or do several things, with so much

pleasure without a table: so I went to work. And here I must needs

observe, that as reason is the substance and origin of the

mathematics, so by stating and squaring everything by reason, and

by making the most rational judgment of things, every man may be,

in time, master of every mechanic art. I had never handled a tool

in my life; and yet, in time, by labour, application, and

contrivance, I found at last that I wanted nothing but I could have

made it, especially if I had had tools. However, I made abundance

of things, even without tools; and some with no more tools than an

adze and a hatchet, which perhaps were never made that way before,

and that with infinite labour. For example, if I wanted a board, I

had no other way but to cut down a tree, set it on an edge before

me, and hew it flat on either side with my axe, till I brought it

to be thin as a plank, and then dub it smooth with my adze. It is

true, by this method I could make but one board out of a whole

tree; but this I had no remedy for but patience, any more than I

had for the prodigious deal of time and labour which it took me up

to make a plank or board: but my time or labour was little worth,

and so it was as well employed one way as another.

However, I made me a table and a chair, as I observed above, in the

first place; and this I did out of the short pieces of boards that

I brought on my raft from the ship. But when I had wrought out

some boards as above, I made large shelves, of the breadth of a

foot and a half, one over another all along one side of my cave, to

lay all my tools, nails and ironwork on; and, in a word, to

separate everything at large into their places, that I might come

easily at them. I knocked pieces into the wall of the rock to hang

my guns and all things that would hang up; so that, had my cave

been to be seen, it looked like a general magazine of all necessary

things; and had everything so ready at my hand, that it was a great

pleasure to me to see all my goods in such order, and especially to

find my stock of all necessaries so great.

And now it was that I began to keep a journal of every day's

employment; for, indeed, at first I was in too much hurry, and not

only hurry as to labour, but in too much discomposure of mind; and

my journal would have been full of many dull things; for example, I

must have said thus: "30TH. - After I had got to shore, and escaped

drowning, instead of being thankful to God for my deliverance,

having first vomited, with the great quantity of salt water which

had got into my stomach, and recovering myself a little, I ran

about the shore wringing my hands and beating my head and face,

exclaiming at my misery, and crying out, 'I was undone, undone!'

till, tired and faint, I was forced to lie down on the ground to

repose, but durst not sleep for fear of being devoured."

Some days after this, and after I had been on board the ship, and

got all that I could out of her, yet I could not forbear getting up

to the top of a little mountain and looking out to sea, in hopes of

seeing a ship; then fancy at a vast distance I spied a sail, please

myself with the hopes of it, and then after looking steadily, till

I was almost blind, lose it quite, and sit down and weep like a

child, and thus increase my misery by my folly.

But having gotten over these things in some measure, and having

settled my household staff and habitation, made me a table and a

chair, and all as handsome about me as I could, I began to keep my

journal; of which I shall here give you the copy (though in it will

be told all these particulars over again) as long as it lasted; for

having no more ink, I was forced to leave it off.

CHAPTER V - BUILDS A HOUSE - THE JOURNAL

SEPTEMBER 30, 1659. - I, poor miserable Robinson Crusoe, being

shipwrecked during a dreadful storm in the offing, came on shore on

this dismal, unfortunate island, which I called "The Island of

Despair"; all the rest of the ship's company being drowned, and

myself almost dead.

All the rest of the day I spent in afflicting myself at the dismal

circumstances I was brought to - viz. I had neither food, house,

clothes, weapon, nor place to fly to; and in despair of any relief,

saw nothing but death before me - either that I should be devoured

by wild beasts, murdered by savages, or starved to death for want

of food. At the approach of night I slept in a tree, for fear of

wild creatures; but slept soundly, though it rained all night.

OCTOBER 1. - In the morning I saw, to my great surprise, the ship

had floated with the high tide, and was driven on shore again much

nearer the island; which, as it was some comfort, on one hand -

for, seeing her set upright, and not broken to pieces, I hoped, if

the wind abated, I might get on board, and get some food and

necessaries out of her for my relief - so, on the other hand, it

renewed my grief at the loss of my comrades, who, I imagined, if we

had all stayed on board, might have saved the ship, or, at least,

that they would not have been all drowned as they were; and that,

had the men been saved, we might perhaps have built us a boat out

of the ruins of the ship to have carried us to some other part of

the world. I spent great part of this day in perplexing myself on

these things; but at length, seeing the ship almost dry, I went

upon the sand as near as I could, and then swam on board. This day

also it continued raining, though with no wind at all.

FROM THE 1ST OF OCTOBER TO THE 24TH. - All these days entirely

spent in many several voyages to get all I could out of the ship,

which I brought on shore every tide of flood upon rafts. Much rain

also in the days, though with some intervals of fair weather; but

it seems this was the rainy season.

OCT. 20. - I overset my raft, and all the goods I had got upon it;

but, being in shoal water, and the things being chiefly heavy, I

recovered many of them when the tide was out.

OCT. 25. - It rained all night and all day, with some gusts of

wind; during which time the ship broke in pieces, the wind blowing

a little harder than before, and was no more to be seen, except the

wreck of her, and that only at low water. I spent this day in

covering and securing the goods which I had saved, that the rain

might not spoil them.

OCT. 26. - I walked about the shore almost all day, to find out a

place to fix my habitation, greatly concerned to secure myself from

any attack in the night, either from wild beasts or men. Towards

night, I fixed upon a proper place, under a rock, and marked out a

semicircle for my encampment; which I resolved to strengthen with a

work, wall, or fortification, made of double piles, lined within

with cables, and without with turf.

From the 26th to the 30th I worked very hard in carrying all my

goods to my new habitation, though some part of the time it rained

exceedingly hard.

The 31st, in the morning, I went out into the island with my gun,

to seek for some food, and discover the country; when I killed a

she-goat, and her kid followed me home, which I afterwards killed

also, because it would not feed.

NOVEMBER 1. - I set up my tent under a rock, and lay there for the

first night; making it as large as I could, with stakes driven in

to swing my hammock upon.

NOV. 2. - I set up all my chests and boards, and the pieces of

timber which made my rafts, and with them formed a fence round me,

a little within the place I had marked out for my fortification.

NOV. 3. - I went out with my gun, and killed two fowls like ducks,

which were very good food. In the afternoon went to work to make

me a table.

NOV. 4. - This morning I began to order my times of work, of going

out with my gun, time of sleep, and time of diversion - viz. every

morning I walked out with my gun for two or three hours, if it did

not rain; then employed myself to work till about eleven o'clock;

then eat what I had to live on; and from twelve to two I lay down

to sleep, the weather being excessively hot; and then, in the

evening, to work again. The working part of this day and of the

next were wholly employed in making my table, for I was yet but a

very sorry workman, though time and necessity made me a complete

natural mechanic soon after, as I believe they would do any one

else.

NOV. 5. - This day went abroad with my gun and my dog, and killed a

wild cat; her skin pretty soft, but her flesh good for nothing;

every creature that I killed I took of the skins and preserved

them. Coming back by the sea-shore, I saw many sorts of sea-fowls,

which I did not understand; but was surprised, and almost

frightened, with two or three seals, which, while I was gazing at,

not well knowing what they were, got into the sea, and escaped me

for that time.

NOV. 6. - After my morning walk I went to work with my table again,

and finished it, though not to my liking; nor was it long before I

learned to mend it.

NOV. 7. - Now it began to be settled fair weather. The 7th, 8th,

9th, 10th, and part of the 12th (for the 11th was Sunday) I took

wholly up to make me a chair, and with much ado brought it to a

tolerable shape, but never to please me; and even in the making I

pulled it in pieces several times.

NOTE. - I soon neglected my keeping Sundays; for, omitting my mark

for them on my post, I forgot which was which.

NOV. 13. - This day it rained, which refreshed me exceedingly, and

cooled the earth; but it was accompanied with terrible thunder and

lightning, which frightened me dreadfully, for fear of my powder.

As soon as it was over, I resolved to separate my stock of powder

into as many little parcels as possible, that it might not be in

danger.

NOV. 14, 15, 16. - These three days I spent in making little square

chests, or boxes, which might hold about a pound, or two pounds at

most, of powder; and so, putting the powder in, I stowed it in

places as secure and remote from one another as possible. On one

of these three days I killed a large bird that was good to eat, but

I knew not what to call it.

NOV. 17. - This day I began to dig behind my tent into the rock, to

make room for my further conveniency.

NOTE. - Three things I wanted exceedingly for this work - viz. a

pickaxe, a shovel, and a wheelbarrow or basket; so I desisted from

my work, and began to consider how to supply that want, and make me

some tools. As for the pickaxe, I made use of the iron crows,

which were proper enough, though heavy; but the next thing was a

shovel or spade; this was so absolutely necessary, that, indeed, I

could do nothing effectually without it; but what kind of one to

make I knew not.

NOV. 18. - The next day, in searching the woods, I found a tree of

that wood, or like it, which in the Brazils they call the iron-

tree, for its exceeding hardness. Of this, with great labour, and

almost spoiling my axe, I cut a piece, and brought it home, too,

with difficulty enough, for it was exceeding heavy. The excessive

hardness of the wood, and my having no other way, made me a long

while upon this machine, for I worked it effectually by little and

little into the form of a shovel or spade; the handle exactly

shaped like ours in England, only that the board part having no

iron shod upon it at bottom, it would not last me so long; however,

it served well enough for the uses which I had occasion to put it

to; but never was a shovel, I believe, made after that fashion, or

so long in making.

I was still deficient, for I wanted a basket or a wheelbarrow. A

basket I could not make by any means, having no such things as

twigs that would bend to make wicker-ware - at least, none yet

found out; and as to a wheelbarrow, I fancied I could make all but

the wheel; but that I had no notion of; neither did I know how to

go about it; besides, I had no possible way to make the iron

gudgeons for the spindle or axis of the wheel to run in; so I gave

it over, and so, for carrying away the earth which I dug out of the

cave, I made me a thing like a hod which the labourers carry mortar

in when they serve the bricklayers. This was not so difficult to

me as the making the shovel: and yet this and the shovel, and the

attempt which I made in vain to make a wheelbarrow, took me up no

less than four days - I mean always excepting my morning walk with

my gun, which I seldom failed, and very seldom failed also bringing

home something fit to eat.

NOV. 23. - My other work having now stood still, because of my

making these tools, when they were finished I went on, and working

every day, as my strength and time allowed, I spent eighteen days

entirely in widening and deepening my cave, that it might hold my

goods commodiously.

NOTE. - During all this time I worked to make this room or cave

spacious enough to accommodate me as a warehouse or magazine, a

kitchen, a dining-room, and a cellar. As for my lodging, I kept to

the tent; except that sometimes, in the wet season of the year, it

rained so hard that I could not keep myself dry, which caused me

afterwards to cover all my place within my pale with long poles, in

the form of rafters, leaning against the rock, and load them with

flags and large leaves of trees, like a thatch.

DECEMBER 10. - I began now to think my cave or vault finished, when

on a sudden (it seems I had made it too large) a great quantity of

earth fell down from the top on one side; so much that, in short,

it frighted me, and not without reason, too, for if I had been

under it, I had never wanted a gravedigger. I had now a great deal

of work to do over again, for I had the loose earth to carry out;

and, which was of more importance, I had the ceiling to prop up, so

that I might be sure no more would come down.

DEC. 11. - This day I went to work with it accordingly, and got two

shores or posts pitched upright to the top, with two pieces of

boards across over each post; this I finished the next day; and

setting more posts up with boards, in about a week more I had the

roof secured, and the posts, standing in rows, served me for

partitions to part off the house.

DEC. 17. - From this day to the 20th I placed shelves, and knocked

up nails on the posts, to hang everything up that could be hung up;

and now I began to be in some order within doors.

DEC. 20. - Now I carried everything into the cave, and began to

furnish my house, and set up some pieces of boards like a dresser,

to order my victuals upon; but boards began to be very scarce with

me; also, I made me another table.

DEC. 24. - Much rain all night and all day. No stirring out.

DEC. 25. - Rain all day.

DEC. 26. - No rain, and the earth much cooler than before, and

pleasanter.

DEC. 27. - Killed a young goat, and lamed another, so that I caught

it and led it home in a string; when I had it at home, I bound and

splintered up its leg, which was broke.

N.B. - I took such care of it that it lived, and the leg grew well

and as strong as ever; but, by my nursing it so long, it grew tame,

and fed upon the little green at my door, and would not go away.

This was the first time that I entertained a thought of breeding up

some tame creatures, that I might have food when my powder and shot

was all spent.

DEC. 28,29,30,31. - Great heats, and no breeze, so that there was

no stirring abroad, except in the evening, for food; this time I

spent in putting all my things in order within doors.

JANUARY 1. - Very hot still: but I went abroad early and late with

my gun, and lay still in the middle of the day. This evening,

going farther into the valleys which lay towards the centre of the

island, I found there were plenty of goats, though exceedingly shy,

and hard to come at; however, I resolved to try if I could not

bring my dog to hunt them down.

JAN. 2. - Accordingly, the next day I went out with my dog, and set

him upon the goats, but I was mistaken, for they all faced about

upon the dog, and he knew his danger too well, for he would not

come near them.

JAN. 3. - I began my fence or wall; which, being still jealous of

my being attacked by somebody, I resolved to make very thick and

strong.

N.B. - This wall being described before, I purposely omit what was

said in the journal; it is sufficient to observe, that I was no

less time than from the 2nd of January to the 14th of April

working, finishing, and perfecting this wall, though it was no more

than about twenty-four yards in length, being a half-circle from

one place in the rock to another place, about eight yards from it,

the door of the cave being in the centre behind it.

All this time I worked very hard, the rains hindering me many days,

nay, sometimes weeks together; but I thought I should never be

perfectly secure till this wall was finished; and it is scarce

credible what inexpressible labour everything was done with,

especially the bringing piles out of the woods and driving them

into the ground; for I made them much bigger than I needed to have

done.

When this wall was finished, and the outside double fenced, with a

turf wall raised up close to it, I perceived myself that if any

people were to come on shore there, they would not perceive

anything like a habitation; and it was very well I did so, as may

be observed hereafter, upon a very remarkable occasion.

During this time I made my rounds in the woods for game every day

when the rain permitted me, and made frequent discoveries in these

walks of something or other to my advantage; particularly, I found

a kind of wild pigeons, which build, not as wood-pigeons in a tree,

but rather as house-pigeons, in the holes of the rocks; and taking

some young ones, I endeavoured to breed them up tame, and did so;

but when they grew older they flew away, which perhaps was at first

for want of feeding them, for I had nothing to give them; however,

I frequently found their nests, and got their young ones, which

were very good meat. And now, in the managing my household

affairs, I found myself wanting in many things, which I thought at

first it was impossible for me to make; as, indeed, with some of

them it was: for instance, I could never make a cask to be hooped.

I had a small runlet or two, as I observed before; but I could

never arrive at the capacity of making one by them, though I spent

many weeks about it; I could neither put in the heads, or join the

staves so true to one another as to make them hold water; so I gave

that also over. In the next place, I was at a great loss for

candles; so that as soon as ever it was dark, which was generally

by seven o'clock, I was obliged to go to bed. I remembered the

lump of beeswax with which I made candles in my African adventure;

but I had none of that now; the only remedy I had was, that when I

had killed a goat I saved the tallow, and with a little dish made

of clay, which I baked in the sun, to which I added a wick of some

oakum, I made me a lamp; and this gave me light, though not a

clear, steady light, like a candle. In the middle of all my

labours it happened that, rummaging my things, I found a little bag

which, as I hinted before, had been filled with corn for the

feeding of poultry - not for this voyage, but before, as I suppose,

when the ship came from Lisbon. The little remainder of corn that

had been in the bag was all devoured by the rats, and I saw nothing

in the bag but husks and dust; and being willing to have the bag

for some other use (I think it was to put powder in, when I divided

it for fear of the lightning, or some such use), I shook the husks

of corn out of it on one side of my fortification, under the rock.

It was a little before the great rains just now mentioned that I

threw this stuff away, taking no notice, and not so much as

remembering that I had thrown anything there, when, about a month

after, or thereabouts, I saw some few stalks of something green

shooting out of the ground, which I fancied might be some plant I

had not seen; but I was surprised, and perfectly astonished, when,

after a little longer time, I saw about ten or twelve ears come

out, which were perfect green barley, of the same kind as our

European - nay, as our English barley.

It is impossible to express the astonishment and confusion of my

thoughts on this occasion. I had hitherto acted upon no religious

foundation at all; indeed, I had very few notions of religion in my

head, nor had entertained any sense of anything that had befallen

me otherwise than as chance, or, as we lightly say, what pleases

God, without so much as inquiring into the end of Providence in

these things, or His order in governing events for the world. But

after I saw barley grow there, in a climate which I knew was not

proper for corn, and especially that I knew not how it came there,

it startled me strangely, and I began to suggest that God had

miraculously caused His grain to grow without any help of seed

sown, and that it was so directed purely for my sustenance on that

wild, miserable place.

This touched my heart a little, and brought tears out of my eyes,

and I began to bless myself that such a prodigy of nature should

happen upon my account; and this was the more strange to me,

because I saw near it still, all along by the side of the rock,

some other straggling stalks, which proved to be stalks of rice,

and which I knew, because I had seen it grow in Africa when I was

ashore there.

I not only thought these the pure productions of Providence for my

support, but not doubting that there was more in the place, I went

all over that part of the island, where I had been before, peering

in every corner, and under every rock, to see for more of it, but I

could not find any. At last it occurred to my thoughts that I

shook a bag of chickens' meat out in that place; and then the

wonder began to cease; and I must confess my religious thankfulness

to God's providence began to abate, too, upon the discovering that

all this was nothing but what was common; though I ought to have

been as thankful for so strange and unforeseen a providence as if

it had been miraculous; for it was really the work of Providence to

me, that should order or appoint that ten or twelve grains of corn

should remain unspoiled, when the rats had destroyed all the rest,

as if it had been dropped from heaven; as also, that I should throw

it out in that particular place, where, it being in the shade of a

high rock, it sprang up immediately; whereas, if I had thrown it

anywhere else at that time, it had been burnt up and destroyed.

I carefully saved the ears of this corn, you may be sure, in their

season, which was about the end of June; and, laying up every corn,

I resolved to sow them all again, hoping in time to have some

quantity sufficient to supply me with bread. But it was not till

the fourth year that I could allow myself the least grain of this

corn to eat, and even then but sparingly, as I shall say

afterwards, in its order; for I lost all that I sowed the first

season by not observing the proper time; for I sowed it just before

the dry season, so that it never came up at all, at least not as it

would have done; of which in its place.

Besides this barley, there were, as above, twenty or thirty stalks

of rice, which I preserved with the same care and for the same use,

or to the same purpose - to make me bread, or rather food; for I

found ways to cook it without baking, though I did that also after

some time.

But to return to my Journal.

I worked excessive hard these three or four months to get my wall

done; and the 14th of April I closed it up, contriving to go into

it, not by a door but over the wall, by a ladder, that there might

be no sign on the outside of my habitation.

APRIL 16. - I finished the ladder; so I went up the ladder to the

top, and then pulled it up after me, and let it down in the inside.

This was a complete enclosure to me; for within I had room enough,

and nothing could come at me from without, unless it could first

mount my wall.

The very next day after this wall was finished I had almost had all

my labour overthrown at once, and myself killed. The case was

thus: As I was busy in the inside, behind my tent, just at the

entrance into my cave, I was terribly frighted with a most

dreadful, surprising thing indeed; for all on a sudden I found the

earth come crumbling down from the roof of my cave, and from the

edge of the hill over my head, and two of the posts I had set up in

the cave cracked in a frightful manner. I was heartily scared; but

thought nothing of what was really the cause, only thinking that

the top of my cave was fallen in, as some of it had done before:

and for fear I should be buried in it I ran forward to my ladder,

and not thinking myself safe there neither, I got over my wall for

fear of the pieces of the hill, which I expected might roll down

upon me. I had no sooner stepped do ground, than I plainly saw it

was a terrible earthquake, for the ground I stood on shook three

times at about eight minutes' distance, with three such shocks as

would have overturned the strongest building that could be supposed

to have stood on the earth; and a great piece of the top of a rock

which stood about half a mile from me next the sea fell down with

such a terrible noise as I never heard in all my life. I perceived

also the very sea was put into violent motion by it; and I believe

the shocks were stronger under the water than on the island.

I was so much amazed with the thing itself, having never felt the

like, nor discoursed with any one that had, that I was like one

dead or stupefied; and the motion of the earth made my stomach

sick, like one that was tossed at sea; but the noise of the falling

of the rock awakened me, as it were, and rousing me from the

stupefied condition I was in, filled me with horror; and I thought

of nothing then but the hill falling upon my tent and all my

household goods, and burying all at once; and this sunk my very

soul within me a second time.

After the third shock was over, and I felt no more for some time, I

began to take courage; and yet I had not heart enough to go over my

wall again, for fear of being buried alive, but sat still upon the

ground greatly cast down and disconsolate, not knowing what to do.

All this while I had not the least serious religious thought;

nothing but the common "Lord have mercy upon me!" and when it was

over that went away too.

While I sat thus, I found the air overcast and grow cloudy, as if

it would rain. Soon after that the wind arose by little and

little, so that in less than half-an-hour it blew a most dreadful

hurricane; the sea was all on a sudden covered over with foam and

froth; the shore was covered with the breach of the water, the

trees were torn up by the roots, and a terrible storm it was. This

held about three hours, and then began to abate; and in two hours

more it was quite calm, and began to rain very hard. All this

while I sat upon the ground very much terrified and dejected; when

on a sudden it came into my thoughts, that these winds and rain

being the consequences of the earthquake, the earthquake itself was

spent and over, and I might venture into my cave again. With this

thought my spirits began to revive; and the rain also helping to

persuade me, I went in and sat down in my tent. But the rain was

so violent that my tent was ready to be beaten down with it; and I

was forced to go into my cave, though very much afraid and uneasy,

for fear it should fall on my head. This violent rain forced me to

a new work - viz. to cut a hole through my new fortification, like

a sink, to let the water go out, which would else have flooded my

cave. After I had been in my cave for some time, and found still

no more shocks of the earthquake follow, I began to be more

composed. And now, to support my spirits, which indeed wanted it

very much, I went to my little store, and took a small sup of rum;

which, however, I did then and always very sparingly, knowing I

could have no more when that was gone. It continued raining all

that night and great part of the next day, so that I could not stir

abroad; but my mind being more composed, I began to think of what I

had best do; concluding that if the island was subject to these

earthquakes, there would be no living for me in a cave, but I must

consider of building a little hut in an open place which I might

surround with a wall, as I had done here, and so make myself secure

from wild beasts or men; for I concluded, if I stayed where I was,

I should certainly one time or other be buried alive.

With these thoughts, I resolved to remove my tent from the place

where it stood, which was just under the hanging precipice of the

hill; and which, if it should be shaken again, would certainly fall

upon my tent; and I spent the two next days, being the 19th and

20th of April, in contriving where and how to remove my habitation.

The fear of being swallowed up alive made me that I never slept in

quiet; and yet the apprehension of lying abroad without any fence

was almost equal to it; but still, when I looked about, and saw how

everything was put in order, how pleasantly concealed I was, and

how safe from danger, it made me very loath to remove. In the

meantime, it occurred to me that it would require a vast deal of

time for me to do this, and that I must be contented to venture

where I was, till I had formed a camp for myself, and had secured

it so as to remove to it. So with this resolution I composed

myself for a time, and resolved that I would go to work with all

speed to build me a wall with piles and cables, &c., in a circle,

as before, and set my tent up in it when it was finished; but that

I would venture to stay where I was till it was finished, and fit

to remove. This was the 21st.

APRIL 22. - The next morning I begin to consider of means to put

this resolve into execution; but I was at a great loss about my

tools. I had three large axes, and abundance of hatchets (for we

carried the hatchets for traffic with the Indians); but with much

chopping and cutting knotty hard wood, they were all full of

notches, and dull; and though I had a grindstone, I could not turn

it and grind my tools too. This cost me as much thought as a

statesman would have bestowed upon a grand point of politics, or a

judge upon the life and death of a man. At length I contrived a

wheel with a string, to turn it with my foot, that I might have

both my hands at liberty. NOTE. - I had never seen any such thing

in England, or at least, not to take notice how it was done, though

since I have observed, it is very common there; besides that, my

grindstone was very large and heavy. This machine cost me a full

week's work to bring it to perfection.

APRIL 28, 29. - These two whole days I took up in grinding my

tools, my machine for turning my grindstone performing very well.

APRIL 30. - Having perceived my bread had been low a great while,

now I took a survey of it, and reduced myself to one biscuit cake a

day, which made my heart very heavy.

MAY 1. - In the morning, looking towards the sea side, the tide

being low, I saw something lie on the shore bigger than ordinary,

and it looked like a cask; when I came to it, I found a small

barrel, and two or three pieces of the wreck of the ship, which

were driven on shore by the late hurricane; and looking towards the

wreck itself, I thought it seemed to lie higher out of the water

than it used to do. I examined the barrel which was driven on

shore, and soon found it was a barrel of gunpowder; but it had

taken water, and the powder was caked as hard as a stone; however,

I rolled it farther on shore for the present, and went on upon the

sands, as near as I could to the wreck of the ship, to look for

more.

CHAPTER VI - ILL AND CONSCIENCE-STRICKEN

WHEN I came down to the ship I found it strangely removed. The

forecastle, which lay before buried in sand, was heaved up at least

six feet, and the stern, which was broke in pieces and parted from

the rest by the force of the sea, soon after I had left rummaging

her, was tossed as it were up, and cast on one side; and the sand

was thrown so high on that side next her stern, that whereas there

was a great place of water before, so that I could not come within

a quarter of a mile of the wreck without swimming I could now walk

quite up to her when the tide was out. I was surprised with this

at first, but soon concluded it must be done by the earthquake; and

as by this violence the ship was more broke open than formerly, so

many things came daily on shore, which the sea had loosened, and

which the winds and water rolled by degrees to the land.

This wholly diverted my thoughts from the design of removing my

habitation, and I busied myself mightily, that day especially, in

searching whether I could make any way into the ship; but I found

nothing was to be expected of that kind, for all the inside of the

ship was choked up with sand. However, as I had learned not to

despair of anything, I resolved to pull everything to pieces that I

could of the ship, concluding that everything I could get from her

would be of some use or other to me.

MAY 3. - I began with my saw, and cut a piece of a beam through,

which I thought held some of the upper part or quarter-deck

together, and when I had cut it through, I cleared away the sand as

well as I could from the side which lay highest; but the tide

coming in, I was obliged to give over for that time.

MAY 4. - I went a-fishing, but caught not one fish that I durst eat

of, till I was weary of my sport; when, just going to leave off, I

caught a young dolphin. I had made me a long line of some rope-

yarn, but I had no hooks; yet I frequently caught fish enough, as

much as I cared to eat; all which I dried in the sun, and ate them

dry.

MAY 5. - Worked on the wreck; cut another beam asunder, and brought

three great fir planks off from the decks, which I tied together,

and made to float on shore when the tide of flood came on.

MAY 6. - Worked on the wreck; got several iron bolts out of her and

other pieces of ironwork. Worked very hard, and came home very

much tired, and had thoughts of giving it over.

MAY 7. - Went to the wreck again, not with an intent to work, but

found the weight of the wreck had broke itself down, the beams

being cut; that several pieces of the ship seemed to lie loose, and

the inside of the hold lay so open that I could see into it; but it

was almost full of water and sand.

MAY 8. - Went to the wreck, and carried an iron crow to wrench up

the deck, which lay now quite clear of the water or sand. I

wrenched open two planks, and brought them on shore also with the

tide. I left the iron crow in the wreck for next day.

MAY 9. - Went to the wreck, and with the crow made way into the

body of the wreck, and felt several casks, and loosened them with

the crow, but could not break them up. I felt also a roll of

English lead, and could stir it, but it was too heavy to remove.

MAY 10-14. - Went every day to the wreck; and got a great many

pieces of timber, and boards, or plank, and two or three

hundredweight of iron.

MAY 15. - I carried two hatchets, to try if I could not cut a piece

off the roll of lead by placing the edge of one hatchet and driving

it with the other; but as it lay about a foot and a half in the

water, I could not make any blow to drive the hatchet.

MAY 16. - It had blown hard in the night, and the wreck appeared

more broken by the force of the water; but I stayed so long in the

woods, to get pigeons for food, that the tide prevented my going to

the wreck that day.

MAY 17. - I saw some pieces of the wreck blown on shore, at a great

distance, near two miles off me, but resolved to see what they

were, and found it was a piece of the head, but too heavy for me to

bring away.

MAY 24. - Every day, to this day, I worked on the wreck; and with

hard labour I loosened some things so much with the crow, that the

first flowing tide several casks floated out, and two of the

seamen's chests; but the wind blowing from the shore, nothing came

to land that day but pieces of timber, and a hogshead, which had

some Brazil pork in it; but the salt water and the sand had spoiled

it. I continued this work every day to the 15th of June, except

the time necessary to get food, which I always appointed, during

this part of my employment, to be when the tide was up, that I

might be ready when it was ebbed out; and by this time I had got

timber and plank and ironwork enough to have built a good boat, if

I had known how; and also I got, at several times and in several

pieces, near one hundredweight of the sheet lead.

JUNE 16. - Going down to the seaside, I found a large tortoise or

turtle. This was the first I had seen, which, it seems, was only

my misfortune, not any defect of the place, or scarcity; for had I

happened to be on the other side of the island, I might have had

hundreds of them every day, as I found afterwards; but perhaps had

paid dear enough for them.

JUNE 17. - I spent in cooking the turtle. I found in her three-

score eggs; and her flesh was to me, at that time, the most savoury

and pleasant that ever I tasted in my life, having had no flesh,

but of goats and fowls, since I landed in this horrid place.

JUNE 18. - Rained all day, and I stayed within. I thought at this

time the rain felt cold, and I was something chilly; which I knew

was not usual in that latitude.

JUNE 19. - Very ill, and shivering, as if the weather had been

cold.

JUNE 20. - No rest all night; violent pains in my head, and

feverish.

JUNE 21. - Very ill; frighted almost to death with the

apprehensions of my sad condition - to be sick, and no help.

Prayed to God, for the first time since the storm off Hull, but

scarce knew what I said, or why, my thoughts being all confused.

JUNE 22. - A little better; but under dreadful apprehensions of

sickness.

JUNE 22. - Very bad again; cold and shivering, and then a violent

headache.

JUNE 24. - Much better.

JUNE 25. - An ague very violent; the fit held me seven hours; cold

fit and hot, with faint sweats after it.

JUNE 26. - Better; and having no victuals to eat, took my gun, but

found myself very weak. However, I killed a she-goat, and with

much difficulty got it home, and broiled some of it, and ate, I

would fain have stewed it, and made some broth, but had no pot.

JUNE 27. - The ague again so violent that I lay a-bed all day, and

neither ate nor drank. I was ready to perish for thirst; but so

weak, I had not strength to stand up, or to get myself any water to

drink. Prayed to God again, but was light-headed; and when I was

not, I was so ignorant that I knew not what to say; only I lay and

cried, "Lord, look upon me! Lord, pity me! Lord, have mercy upon

me!" I suppose I did nothing else for two or three hours; till,

the fit wearing off, I fell asleep, and did not wake till far in

the night. When I awoke, I found myself much refreshed, but weak,

and exceeding thirsty. However, as I had no water in my

habitation, I was forced to lie till morning, and went to sleep

again. In this second sleep I had this terrible dream: I thought

that I was sitting on the ground, on the outside of my wall, where

I sat when the storm blew after the earthquake, and that I saw a

man descend from a great black cloud, in a bright flame of fire,

and light upon the ground. He was all over as bright as a flame,

so that I could but just bear to look towards him; his countenance

was most inexpressibly dreadful, impossible for words to describe.

When he stepped upon the ground with his feet, I thought the earth

trembled, just as it had done before in the earthquake, and all the

air looked, to my apprehension, as if it had been filled with

flashes of fire. He was no sooner landed upon the earth, but he

moved forward towards me, with a long spear or weapon in his hand,

to kill me; and when he came to a rising ground, at some distance,

he spoke to me - or I heard a voice so terrible that it is

impossible to express the terror of it. All that I can say I

understood was this: "Seeing all these things have not brought thee

to repentance, now thou shalt die;" at which words, I thought he

lifted up the spear that was in his hand to kill me.

No one that shall ever read this account will expect that I should

be able to describe the horrors of my soul at this terrible vision.

I mean, that even while it was a dream, I even dreamed of those

horrors. Nor is it any more possible to describe the impression

that remained upon my mind when I awaked, and found it was but a

dream.

I had, alas! no divine knowledge. What I had received by the good

instruction of my father was then worn out by an uninterrupted

series, for eight years, of seafaring wickedness, and a constant

conversation with none but such as were, like myself, wicked and

profane to the last degree. I do not remember that I had, in all

that time, one thought that so much as tended either to looking

upwards towards God, or inwards towards a reflection upon my own

ways; but a certain stupidity of soul, without desire of good, or

conscience of evil, had entirely overwhelmed me; and I was all that

the most hardened, unthinking, wicked creature among our common

sailors can be supposed to be; not having the least sense, either

of the fear of God in danger, or of thankfulness to God in

deliverance.

In the relating what is already past of my story, this will be the

more easily believed when I shall add, that through all the variety

of miseries that had to this day befallen me, I never had so much

as one thought of it being the hand of God, or that it was a just

punishment for my sin - my rebellious behaviour against my father -

or my present sins, which were great - or so much as a punishment

for the general course of my wicked life. When I was on the

desperate expedition on the desert shores of Africa, I never had so

much as one thought of what would become of me, or one wish to God

to direct me whither I should go, or to keep me from the danger

which apparently surrounded me, as well from voracious creatures as

cruel savages. But I was merely thoughtless of a God or a

Providence, acted like a mere brute, from the principles of nature,

and by the dictates of common sense only, and, indeed, hardly that.

When I was delivered and taken up at sea by the Portugal captain,

well used, and dealt justly and honourably with, as well as

charitably, I had not the least thankfulness in my thoughts. When,

again, I was shipwrecked, ruined, and in danger of drowning on this

island, I was as far from remorse, or looking on it as a judgment.

I only said to myself often, that I was an unfortunate dog, and

born to be always miserable.

It is true, when I got on shore first here, and found all my ship's

crew drowned and myself spared, I was surprised with a kind of

ecstasy, and some transports of soul, which, had the grace of God

assisted, might have come up to true thankfulness; but it ended

where it began, in a mere common flight of joy, or, as I may say,

being glad I was alive, without the least reflection upon the

distinguished goodness of the hand which had preserved me, and had

singled me out to be preserved when all the rest were destroyed, or

an inquiry why Providence had been thus merciful unto me. Even

just the same common sort of joy which seamen generally have, after

they are got safe ashore from a shipwreck, which they drown all in

the next bowl of punch, and forget almost as soon as it is over;

and all the rest of my life was like it. Even when I was

afterwards, on due consideration, made sensible of my condition,

how I was cast on this dreadful place, out of the reach of human

kind, out of all hope of relief, or prospect of redemption, as soon

as I saw but a prospect of living and that I should not starve and

perish for hunger, all the sense of my affliction wore off; and I

began to be very easy, applied myself to the works proper for my

preservation and supply, and was far enough from being afflicted at

my condition, as a judgment from heaven, or as the hand of God

against me: these were thoughts which very seldom entered my head.

The growing up of the corn, as is hinted in my Journal, had at

first some little influence upon me, and began to affect me with

seriousness, as long as I thought it had something miraculous in

it; but as soon as ever that part of the thought was removed, all

the impression that was raised from it wore off also, as I have

noted already. Even the earthquake, though nothing could be more

terrible in its nature, or more immediately directing to the

invisible Power which alone directs such things, yet no sooner was

the first fright over, but the impression it had made went off

also. I had no more sense of God or His judgments - much less of

the present affliction of my circumstances being from His hand -

than if I had been in the most prosperous condition of life. But

now, when I began to be sick, and a leisurely view of the miseries

of death came to place itself before me; when my spirits began to

sink under the burden of a strong distemper, and nature was

exhausted with the violence of the fever; conscience, that had

slept so long, began to awake, and I began to reproach myself with

my past life, in which I had so evidently, by uncommon wickedness,

provoked the justice of God to lay me under uncommon strokes, and

to deal with me in so vindictive a manner. These reflections

oppressed me for the second or third day of my distemper; and in

the violence, as well of the fever as of the dreadful reproaches of

my conscience, extorted some words from me like praying to God,

though I cannot say they were either a prayer attended with desires

or with hopes: it was rather the voice of mere fright and distress.

My thoughts were confused, the convictions great upon my mind, and

the horror of dying in such a miserable condition raised vapours

into my head with the mere apprehensions; and in these hurries of

my soul I knew not what my tongue might express. But it was rather

exclamation, such as, "Lord, what a miserable creature am I! If I

should be sick, I shall certainly die for want of help; and what

will become of me!" Then the tears burst out of my eyes, and I

could say no more for a good while. In this interval the good

advice of my father came to my mind, and presently his prediction,

which I mentioned at the beginning of this story - viz. that if I

did take this foolish step, God would not bless me, and I would

have leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his counsel

when there might be none to assist in my recovery. "Now," said I,

aloud, "my dear father's words are come to pass; God's justice has

overtaken me, and I have none to help or hear me. I rejected the

voice of Providence, which had mercifully put me in a posture or

station of life wherein I might have been happy and easy; but I

would neither see it myself nor learn to know the blessing of it

from my parents. I left them to mourn over my folly, and now I am

left to mourn under the consequences of it. I abused their help

and assistance, who would have lifted me in the world, and would

have made everything easy to me; and now I have difficulties to

struggle with, too great for even nature itself to support, and no

assistance, no help, no comfort, no advice." Then I cried out,

"Lord, be my help, for I am in great distress." This was the first

prayer, if I may call it so, that I had made for many years.

But to return to my Journal.

JUNE 28. - Having been somewhat refreshed with the sleep I had had,

and the fit being entirely off, I got up; and though the fright and

terror of my dream was very great, yet I considered that the fit of

the ague would return again the next day, and now was my time to

get something to refresh and support myself when I should be ill;

and the first thing I did, I filled a large square case-bottle with

water, and set it upon my table, in reach of my bed; and to take

off the chill or aguish disposition of the water, I put about a

quarter of a pint of rum into it, and mixed them together. Then I

got me a piece of the goat's flesh and broiled it on the coals, but

could eat very little. I walked about, but was very weak, and

withal very sad and heavy-hearted under a sense of my miserable

condition, dreading, the return of my distemper the next day. At

night I made my supper of three of the turtle's eggs, which I

roasted in the ashes, and ate, as we call it, in the shell, and

this was the first bit of meat I had ever asked God's blessing to,

that I could remember, in my whole life. After I had eaten I tried

to walk, but found myself so weak that I could hardly carry a gun,

for I never went out without that; so I went but a little way, and

sat down upon the ground, looking out upon the sea, which was just

before me, and very calm and smooth. As I sat here some such

thoughts as these occurred to me: What is this earth and sea, of

which I have seen so much? Whence is it produced? And what am I,

and all the other creatures wild and tame, human and brutal?

Whence are we? Sure we are all made by some secret Power, who

formed the earth and sea, the air and sky. And who is that? Then

it followed most naturally, it is God that has made all. Well, but

then it came on strangely, if God has made all these things, He

guides and governs them all, and all things that concern them; for

the Power that could make all things must certainly have power to

guide and direct them. If so, nothing can happen in the great

circuit of His works, either without His knowledge or appointment.

And if nothing happens without His knowledge, He knows that I am

here, and am in this dreadful condition; and if nothing happens

without His appointment, He has appointed all this to befall me.

Nothing occurred to my thought to contradict any of these

conclusions, and therefore it rested upon me with the greater

force, that it must needs be that God had appointed all this to

befall me; that I was brought into this miserable circumstance by

His direction, He having the sole power, not of me only, but of

everything that happened in the world. Immediately it followed:

Why has God done this to me? What have I done to be thus used? My

conscience presently checked me in that inquiry, as if I had

blasphemed, and methought it spoke to me like a voice: "Wretch!

dost THOU ask what thou hast done? Look back upon a dreadful

misspent life, and ask thyself what thou hast NOT done? Ask, why

is it that thou wert not long ago destroyed? Why wert thou not

drowned in Yarmouth Roads; killed in the fight when the ship was

taken by the Sallee man-of-war; devoured by the wild beasts on the

coast of Africa; or drowned HERE, when all the crew perished but

thyself? Dost THOU ask, what have I done?" I was struck dumb with

these reflections, as one astonished, and had not a word to say -

no, not to answer to myself, but rose up pensive and sad, walked

back to my retreat, and went up over my wall, as if I had been

going to bed; but my thoughts were sadly disturbed, and I had no

inclination to sleep; so I sat down in my chair, and lighted my

lamp, for it began to be dark. Now, as the apprehension of the

return of my distemper terrified me very much, it occurred to my

thought that the Brazilians take no physic but their tobacco for

almost all distempers, and I had a piece of a roll of tobacco in

one of the chests, which was quite cured, and some also that was

green, and not quite cured.

I went, directed by Heaven no doubt; for in this chest I found a

cure both for soul and body. I opened the chest, and found what I

looked for, the tobacco; and as the few books I had saved lay there

too, I took out one of the Bibles which I mentioned before, and

which to this time I had not found leisure or inclination to look

into. I say, I took it out, and brought both that and the tobacco

with me to the table. What use to make of the tobacco I knew not,

in my distemper, or whether it was good for it or no: but I tried

several experiments with it, as if I was resolved it should hit one

way or other. I first took a piece of leaf, and chewed it in my

mouth, which, indeed, at first almost stupefied my brain, the

tobacco being green and strong, and that I had not been much used

to. Then I took some and steeped it an hour or two in some rum,

and resolved to take a dose of it when I lay down; and lastly., I

burnt some upon a pan of coals, and held my nose close over the

smoke of it as long as I could bear it, as well for the heat as

almost for suffocation. In the interval of this operation I took

up the Bible and began to read; but my head was too much disturbed

with the tobacco to bear reading, at least at that time; only,

having opened the book casually, the first words that occurred to

me were these, "Call on Me in the day of trouble, and I will

deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify Me." These words were very

apt to my case, and made some impression upon my thoughts at the

time of reading them, though not so much as they did afterwards;

for, as for being DELIVERED, the word had no sound, as I may say,

to me; the thing was so remote, so impossible in my apprehension of

things, that I began to say, as the children of Israel did when

they were promised flesh to eat, "Can God spread a table in the

wilderness?" so I began to say, "Can God Himself deliver me from

this place?" And as it was not for many years that any hopes

appeared, this prevailed very often upon my thoughts; but, however,

the words made a great impression upon me, and I mused upon them

very often. It grew now late, and the tobacco had, as I said,

dozed my head so much that I inclined to sleep; so I left my lamp

burning in the cave, lest I should want anything in the night, and

went to bed. But before I lay down, I did what I never had done in

all my life - I kneeled down, and prayed to God to fulfil the

promise to me, that if I called upon Him in the day of trouble, He

would deliver me. After my broken and imperfect prayer was over, I

drank the rum in which I had steeped the tobacco, which was so

strong and rank of the tobacco that I could scarcely get it down;

immediately upon this I went to bed. I found presently it flew up

into my head violently; but I fell into a sound sleep, and waked no

more till, by the sun, it must necessarily be near three o'clock in

the afternoon the next day - nay, to this hour I am partly of

opinion that I slept all the next day and night, and till almost

three the day after; for otherwise I know not how I should lose a

day out of my reckoning in the days of the week, as it appeared

some years after I had done; for if I had lost it by crossing and

recrossing the line, I should have lost more than one day; but

certainly I lost a day in my account, and never knew which way. Be

that, however, one way or the other, when I awaked I found myself

exceedingly refreshed, and my spirits lively and cheerful; when I

got up I was stronger than I was the day before, and my stomach

better, for I was hungry; and, in short, I had no fit the next day,

but continued much altered for the better. This was the 29th.

The 30th was my well day, of course, and I went abroad with my gun,

but did not care to travel too far. I killed a sea-fowl or two,

something like a brandgoose, and brought them home, but was not

very forward to eat them; so I ate some more of the turtle's eggs,

which were very good. This evening I renewed the medicine, which I

had supposed did me good the day before - the tobacco steeped in

rum; only I did not take so much as before, nor did I chew any of

the leaf, or hold my head over the smoke; however, I was not so

well the next day, which was the first of July, as I hoped I should

have been; for I had a little spice of the cold fit, but it was not

much.

JULY 2. - I renewed the medicine all the three ways; and dosed

myself with it as at first, and doubled the quantity which I drank.

JULY 3. - I missed the fit for good and all, though I did not

recover my full strength for some weeks after. While I was thus

gathering strength, my thoughts ran exceedingly upon this

Scripture, "I will deliver thee"; and the impossibility of my

deliverance lay much upon my mind, in bar of my ever expecting it;

but as I was discouraging myself with such thoughts, it occurred to

my mind that I pored so much upon my deliverance from the main

affliction, that I disregarded the deliverance I had received, and

I was as it were made to ask myself such questions as these - viz.

Have I not been delivered, and wonderfully too, from sickness -

from the most distressed condition that could be, and that was so

frightful to me? and what notice had I taken of it? Had I done my

part? God had delivered me, but I had not glorified Him - that is

to say, I had not owned and been thankful for that as a

deliverance; and how could I expect greater deliverance? This

touched my heart very much; and immediately I knelt down and gave

God thanks aloud for my recovery from my sickness.

JULY 4. - In the morning I took the Bible; and beginning at the New

Testament, I began seriously to read it, and imposed upon myself to

read a while every morning and every night; not tying myself to the

number of chapters, but long as my thoughts should engage me. It

was not long after I set seriously to this work till I found my

heart more deeply and sincerely affected with the wickedness of my

past life. The impression of my dream revived; and the words, "All

these things have not brought thee to repentance," ran seriously

through my thoughts. I was earnestly begging of God to give me

repentance, when it happened providentially, the very day, that,

reading the Scripture, I came to these words: "He is exalted a

Prince and a Saviour, to give repentance and to give remission." I

threw down the book; and with my heart as well as my hands lifted

up to heaven, in a kind of ecstasy of joy, I cried out aloud,

"Jesus, thou son of David! Jesus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour!

give me repentance!" This was the first time I could say, in the

true sense of the words, that I prayed in all my life; for now I

prayed with a sense of my condition, and a true Scripture view of

hope, founded on the encouragement of the Word of God; and from

this time, I may say, I began to hope that God would hear me.

Now I began to construe the words mentioned above, "Call on Me, and

I will deliver thee," in a different sense from what I had ever

done before; for then I had no notion of anything being called

DELIVERANCE, but my being delivered from the captivity I was in;

for though I was indeed at large in the place, yet the island was

certainly a prison to me, and that in the worse sense in the world.

But now I learned to take it in another sense: now I looked back

upon my past life with such horror, and my sins appeared so

dreadful, that my soul sought nothing of God but deliverance from

the load of guilt that bore down all my comfort. As for my

solitary life, it was nothing. I did not so much as pray to be

delivered from it or think of it; it was all of no consideration in

comparison to this. And I add this part here, to hint to whoever

shall read it, that whenever they come to a true sense of things,

they will find deliverance from sin a much greater blessing than

deliverance from affliction.

But, leaving this part, I return to my Journal.

My condition began now to be, though not less miserable as to my

way of living, yet much easier to my mind: and my thoughts being

directed, by a constant reading the Scripture and praying to God,

to things of a higher nature, I had a great deal of comfort within,

which till now I knew nothing of; also, my health and strength

returned, I bestirred myself to furnish myself with everything that

I wanted, and make my way of living as regular as I could.

From the 4th of July to the 14th I was chiefly employed in walking

about with my gun in my hand, a little and a little at a time, as a

man that was gathering up his strength after a fit of sickness; for

it is hardly to be imagined how low I was, and to what weakness I

was reduced. The application which I made use of was perfectly

new, and perhaps which had never cured an ague before; neither can

I recommend it to any to practise, by this experiment: and though

it did carry off the fit, yet it rather contributed to weakening

me; for I had frequent convulsions in my nerves and limbs for some

time. I learned from it also this, in particular, that being

abroad in the rainy season was the most pernicious thing to my

health that could be, especially in those rains which came attended

with storms and hurricanes of wind; for as the rain which came in

the dry season was almost always accompanied with such storms, so I

found that rain was much more dangerous than the rain which fell in

September and October.

CHAPTER VII - AGRICULTURAL EXPERIENCE

I HAD now been in this unhappy island above ten months. All

possibility of deliverance from this condition seemed to be

entirely taken from me; and I firmly believe that no human shape

had ever set foot upon that place. Having now secured my

habitation, as I thought, fully to my mind, I had a great desire to

make a more perfect discovery of the island, and to see what other

productions I might find, which I yet knew nothing of.

It was on the 15th of July that I began to take a more particular

survey of the island itself. I went up the creek first, where, as

I hinted, I brought my rafts on shore. I found after I came about

two miles up, that the tide did not flow any higher, and that it

was no more than a little brook of running water, very fresh and

good; but this being the dry season, there was hardly any water in

some parts of it - at least not enough to run in any stream, so as

it could be perceived. On the banks of this brook I found many

pleasant savannahs or meadows, plain, smooth, and covered with

grass; and on the rising parts of them, next to the higher grounds,

where the water, as might be supposed, never overflowed, I found a

great deal of tobacco, green, and growing to a great and very

strong stalk. There were divers other plants, which I had no

notion of or understanding about, that might, perhaps, have virtues

of their own, which I could not find out. I searched for the

cassava root, which the Indians, in all that climate, make their

bread of, but I could find none. I saw large plants of aloes, but

did not understand them. I saw several sugar-canes, but wild, and,

for want of cultivation, imperfect. I contented myself with these

discoveries for this time, and came back, musing with myself what

course I might take to know the virtue and goodness of any of the

fruits or plants which I should discover, but could bring it to no

conclusion; for, in short, I had made so little observation while I

was in the Brazils, that I knew little of the plants in the field;

at least, very little that might serve to any purpose now in my

distress.

The next day, the sixteenth, I went up the same way again; and

after going something further than I had gone the day before, I

found the brook and the savannahs cease, and the country become

more woody than before. In this part I found different fruits, and

particularly I found melons upon the ground, in great abundance,

and grapes upon the trees. The vines had spread, indeed, over the

trees, and the clusters of grapes were just now in their prime,

very ripe and rich. This was a surprising discovery, and I was

exceeding glad of them; but I was warned by my experience to eat

sparingly of them; remembering that when I was ashore in Barbary,

the eating of grapes killed several of our Englishmen, who were

slaves there, by throwing them into fluxes and fevers. But I found

an excellent use for these grapes; and that was, to cure or dry

them in the sun, and keep them as dried grapes or raisins are kept,

which I thought would be, as indeed they were, wholesome and

agreeable to eat when no grapes could be had.

I spent all that evening there, and went not back to my habitation;

which, by the way, was the first night, as I might say, I had lain

from home. In the night, I took my first contrivance, and got up

in a tree, where I slept well; and the next morning proceeded upon

my discovery; travelling nearly four miles, as I might judge by the

length of the valley, keeping still due north, with a ridge of

hills on the south and north side of me. At the end of this march

I came to an opening where the country seemed to descend to the

west; and a little spring of fresh water, which issued out of the

side of the hill by me, ran the other way, that is, due east; and

the country appeared so fresh, so green, so flourishing, everything

being in a constant verdure or flourish of spring that it looked

like a planted garden. I descended a little on the side of that

delicious vale, surveying it with a secret kind of pleasure, though

mixed with my other afflicting thoughts, to think that this was all

my own; that I was king and lord of all this country indefensibly,

and had a right of possession; and if I could convey it, I might

have it in inheritance as completely as any lord of a manor in

England. I saw here abundance of cocoa trees, orange, and lemon,

and citron trees; but all wild, and very few bearing any fruit, at

least not then. However, the green limes that I gathered were not

only pleasant to eat, but very wholesome; and I mixed their juice

afterwards with water, which made it very wholesome, and very cool

and refreshing. I found now I had business enough to gather and

carry home; and I resolved to lay up a store as well of grapes as

limes and lemons, to furnish myself for the wet season, which I

knew was approaching. In order to do this, I gathered a great heap

of grapes in one place, a lesser heap in another place, and a great

parcel of limes and lemons in another place; and taking a few of

each with me, I travelled homewards; resolving to come again, and

bring a bag or sack, or what I could make, to carry the rest home.

Accordingly, having spent three days in this journey, I came home

(so I must now call my tent and my cave); but before I got thither

the grapes were spoiled; the richness of the fruit and the weight

of the juice having broken them and bruised them, they were good

for little or nothing; as to the limes, they were good, but I could

bring but a few.

The next day, being the nineteenth, I went back, having made me two

small bags to bring home my harvest; but I was surprised, when

coming to my heap of grapes, which were so rich and fine when I

gathered them, to find them all spread about, trod to pieces, and

dragged about, some here, some there, and abundance eaten and

devoured. By this I concluded there were some wild creatures

thereabouts, which had done this; but what they were I knew not.

However, as I found there was no laying them up on heaps, and no

carrying them away in a sack, but that one way they would be

destroyed, and the other way they would be crushed with their own

weight, I took another course; for I gathered a large quantity of

the grapes, and hung them trees, that they might cure and dry in

the sun; and as for the limes and lemons, I carried as many back as

I could well stand under.

When I came home from this journey, I contemplated with great

pleasure the fruitfulness of that valley, and the pleasantness of

the situation; the security from storms on that side of the water,

and the wood: and concluded that I had pitched upon a place to fix

my abode which was by far the worst part of the country. Upon the

whole, I began to consider of removing my habitation, and looking

out for a place equally safe as where now I was situate, if

possible, in that pleasant, fruitful part of the island.

This thought ran long in my head, and I was exceeding fond of it

for some time, the pleasantness of the place tempting me; but when

I came to a nearer view of it, I considered that I was now by the

seaside, where it was at least possible that something might happen

to my advantage, and, by the same ill fate that brought me hither

might bring some other unhappy wretches to the same place; and

though it was scarce probable that any such thing should ever

happen, yet to enclose myself among the hills and woods in the

centre of the island was to anticipate my bondage, and to render

such an affair not only improbable, but impossible; and that

therefore I ought not by any means to remove. However, I was so

enamoured of this place, that I spent much of my time there for the

whole of the remaining part of the month of July; and though upon

second thoughts, I resolved not to remove, yet I built me a little

kind of a bower, and surrounded it at a distance with a strong

fence, being a double hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked

and filled between with brushwood; and here I lay very secure,

sometimes two or three nights together; always going over it with a

ladder; so that I fancied now I had my country house and my sea-

coast house; and this work took me up to the beginning of August.

I had but newly finished my fence, and began to enjoy my labour,

when the rains came on, and made me stick close to my first

habitation; for though I had made me a tent like the other, with a

piece of a sail, and spread it very well, yet I had not the shelter

of a hill to keep me from storms, nor a cave behind me to retreat

into when the rains were extraordinary.

About the beginning of August, as I said, I had finished my bower,

and began to enjoy myself. The 3rd of August, I found the grapes I

had hung up perfectly dried, and, indeed, were excellent good

raisins of the sun; so I began to take them down from the trees,

and it was very happy that I did so, for the rains which followed

would have spoiled them, and I had lost the best part of my winter

food; for I had above two hundred large bunches of them. No sooner

had I taken them all down, and carried the most of them home to my

cave, than it began to rain; and from hence, which was the 14th of

August, it rained, more or less, every day till the middle of

October; and sometimes so violently, that I could not stir out of

my cave for several days.

In this season I was much surprised with the increase of my family;

I had been concerned for the loss of one of my cats, who ran away

from me, or, as I thought, had been dead, and I heard no more

tidings of her till, to my astonishment, she came home about the

end of August with three kittens. This was the more strange to me

because, though I had killed a wild cat, as I called it, with my

gun, yet I thought it was quite a different kind from our European

cats; but the young cats were the same kind of house-breed as the

old one; and both my cats being females, I thought it very strange.

But from these three cats I afterwards came to be so pestered with

cats that I was forced to kill them like vermin or wild beasts, and

to drive them from my house as much as possible.

From the 14th of August to the 26th, incessant rain, so that I

could not stir, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In

this confinement, I began to be straitened for food: but venturing

out twice, I one day killed a goat; and the last day, which was the

26th, found a very large tortoise, which was a treat to me, and my

food was regulated thus: I ate a bunch of raisins for my breakfast;

a piece of the goat's flesh, or of the turtle, for my dinner,

broiled - for, to my great misfortune, I had no vessel to boil or

stew anything; and two or three of the turtle's eggs for my supper.

During this confinement in my cover by the rain, I worked daily two

or three hours at enlarging my cave, and by degrees worked it on

towards one side, till I came to the outside of the hill, and made

a door or way out, which came beyond my fence or wall; and so I

came in and out this way. But I was not perfectly easy at lying so

open; for, as I had managed myself before, I was in a perfect

enclosure; whereas now I thought I lay exposed, and open for

anything to come in upon me; and yet I could not perceive that

there was any living thing to fear, the biggest creature that I had

yet seen upon the island being a goat.

SEPT. 30. - I was now come to the unhappy anniversary of my

landing. I cast up the notches on my post, and found I had been on

shore three hundred and sixty-five days. I kept this day as a

solemn fast, setting it apart for religious exercise, prostrating

myself on the ground with the most serious humiliation, confessing

my sins to God, acknowledging His righteous judgments upon me, and

praying to Him to have mercy on me through Jesus Christ; and not

having tasted the least refreshment for twelve hours, even till the

going down of the sun, I then ate a biscuit-cake and a bunch of

grapes, and went to bed, finishing the day as I began it. I had

all this time observed no Sabbath day; for as at first I had no

sense of religion upon my mind, I had, after some time, omitted to

distinguish the weeks, by making a longer notch than ordinary for

the Sabbath day, and so did not really know what any of the days

were; but now, having cast up the days as above, I found I had been

there a year; so I divided it into weeks, and set apart every

seventh day for a Sabbath; though I found at the end of my account

I had lost a day or two in my reckoning. A little after this, my

ink began to fail me, and so I contented myself to use it more

sparingly, and to write down only the most remarkable events of my

life, without continuing a daily memorandum of other things.

The rainy season and the dry season began now to appear regular to

me, and I learned to divide them so as to provide for them

accordingly; but I bought all my experience before I had it, and

this I am going to relate was one of the most discouraging

experiments that I made.

I have mentioned that I had saved the few ears of barley and rice,

which I had so surprisingly found spring up, as I thought, of

themselves, and I believe there were about thirty stalks of rice,

and about twenty of barley; and now I thought it a proper time to

sow it, after the rains, the sun being in its southern position,

going from me. Accordingly, I dug up a piece of ground as well as

I could with my wooden spade, and dividing it into two parts, I

sowed my grain; but as I was sowing, it casually occurred to my

thoughts that I would not sow it all at first, because I did not

know when was the proper time for it, so I sowed about two-thirds

of the seed, leaving about a handful of each. It was a great

comfort to me afterwards that I did so, for not one grain of what I

sowed this time came to anything: for the dry months following, the

earth having had no rain after the seed was sown, it had no

moisture to assist its growth, and never came up at all till the

wet season had come again, and then it grew as if it had been but

newly sown. Finding my first seed did not grow, which I easily

imagined was by the drought, I sought for a moister piece of ground

to make another trial in, and I dug up a piece of ground near my

new bower, and sowed the rest of my seed in February, a little

before the vernal equinox; and this having the rainy months of

March and April to water it, sprung up very pleasantly, and yielded

a very good crop; but having part of the seed left only, and not

daring to sow all that I had, I had but a small quantity at last,

my whole crop not amounting to above half a peck of each kind. But

by this experiment I was made master of my business, and knew

exactly when the proper season was to sow, and that I might expect

two seed-times and two harvests every year.

While this corn was growing I made a little discovery, which was of

use to me afterwards. As soon as the rains were over, and the

weather began to settle, which was about the month of November, I

made a visit up the country to my bower, where, though I had not

been some months, yet I found all things just as I left them. The

circle or double hedge that I had made was not only firm and

entire, but the stakes which I had cut out of some trees that grew

thereabouts were all shot out and grown with long branches, as much

as a willow-tree usually shoots the first year after lopping its

head. I could not tell what tree to call it that these stakes were

cut from. I was surprised, and yet very well pleased, to see the

young trees grow; and I pruned them, and led them up to grow as

much alike as I could; and it is scarce credible how beautiful a

figure they grew into in three years; so that though the hedge made

a circle of about twenty-five yards in diameter, yet the trees, for

such I might now call them, soon covered it, and it was a complete

shade, sufficient to lodge under all the dry season. This made me

resolve to cut some more stakes, and make me a hedge like this, in

a semi-circle round my wall (I mean that of my first dwelling),

which I did; and placing the trees or stakes in a double row, at

about eight yards distance from my first fence, they grew

presently, and were at first a fine cover to my habitation, and

afterwards served for a defence also, as I shall observe in its

order.

I found now that the seasons of the year might generally be

divided, not into summer and winter, as in Europe, but into the

rainy seasons and the dry seasons, which were generally thus:- The

half of February, the whole of March, and the half of April -

rainy, the sun being then on or near the equinox.

The half of April, the whole of May, June, and July, and the half

of August - dry, the sun being then to the north of the line.

The half of August, the whole of September, and the half of October

- rainy, the sun being then come back.

The half of October, the whole of November, December, and January,

and the half of February - dry, the sun being then to the south of

the line.

The rainy seasons sometimes held longer or shorter as the winds

happened to blow, but this was the general observation I made.

After I had found by experience the ill consequences of being

abroad in the rain, I took care to furnish myself with provisions

beforehand, that I might not be obliged to go out, and I sat within

doors as much as possible during the wet months. This time I found

much employment, and very suitable also to the time, for I found

great occasion for many things which I had no way to furnish myself

with but by hard labour and constant application; particularly I

tried many ways to make myself a basket, but all the twigs I could

get for the purpose proved so brittle that they would do nothing.

It proved of excellent advantage to me now, that when I was a boy,

I used to take great delight in standing at a basket-maker's, in

the town where my father lived, to see them make their wicker-ware;

and being, as boys usually are, very officious to help, and a great

observer of the manner in which they worked those things, and

sometimes lending a hand, I had by these means full knowledge of

the methods of it, and I wanted nothing but the materials, when it

came into my mind that the twigs of that tree from whence I cut my

stakes that grew might possibly be as tough as the sallows,

willows, and osiers in England, and I resolved to try.

Accordingly, the next day I went to my country house, as I called

it, and cutting some of the smaller twigs, I found them to my

purpose as much as I could desire; whereupon I came the next time

prepared with a hatchet to cut down a quantity, which I soon found,

for there was great plenty of them. These I set up to dry within

my circle or hedge, and when they were fit for use I carried them

to my cave; and here, during the next season, I employed myself in

making, as well as I could, a great many baskets, both to carry

earth or to carry or lay up anything, as I had occasion; and though

I did not finish them very handsomely, yet I made them sufficiently

serviceable for my purpose; thus, afterwards, I took care never to

be without them; and as my wicker-ware decayed, I made more,

especially strong, deep baskets to place my corn in, instead of

sacks, when I should come to have any quantity of it.

Having mastered this difficulty, and employed a world of time about

it, I bestirred myself to see, if possible, how to supply two

wants. I had no vessels to hold anything that was liquid, except

two runlets, which were almost full of rum, and some glass bottles

- some of the common size, and others which were case bottles,

square, for the holding of water, spirits, &c. I had not so much

as a pot to boil anything, except a great kettle, which I saved out

of the ship, and which was too big for such as I desired it - viz.

to make broth, and stew a bit of meat by itself. The second thing

I fain would have had was a tobacco-pipe, but it was impossible to

me to make one; however, I found a contrivance for that, too, at

last. I employed myself in planting my second rows of stakes or

piles, and in this wicker-working all the summer or dry season,

when another business took me up more time than it could be

imagined I could spare.

CHAPTER VIII - SURVEYS HIS POSITION

I MENTIONED before that I had a great mind to see the whole island,

and that I had travelled up the brook, and so on to where I built

my bower, and where I had an opening quite to the sea, on the other

side of the island. I now resolved to travel quite across to the

sea-shore on that side; so, taking my gun, a hatchet, and my dog,

and a larger quantity of powder and shot than usual, with two

biscuit-cakes and a great bunch of raisins in my pouch for my

store, I began my journey. When I had passed the vale where my

bower stood, as above, I came within view of the sea to the west,

and it being a very clear day, I fairly descried land - whether an

island or a continent I could not tell; but it lay very high,

extending from the W. to the W.S.W. at a very great distance; by my

guess it could not be less than fifteen or twenty leagues off.

I could not tell what part of the world this might be, otherwise

than that I knew it must be part of America, and, as I concluded by

all my observations, must be near the Spanish dominions, and

perhaps was all inhabited by savages, where, if I had landed, I had

been in a worse condition than I was now; and therefore I

acquiesced in the dispositions of Providence, which I began now to

own and to believe ordered everything for the best; I say I quieted

my mind with this, and left off afflicting myself with fruitless

wishes of being there.

Besides, after some thought upon this affair, I considered that if

this land was the Spanish coast, I should certainly, one time or

other, see some vessel pass or repass one way or other; but if not,

then it was the savage coast between the Spanish country and

Brazils, where are found the worst of savages; for they are

cannibals or men-eaters, and fail not to murder and devour all the

human bodies that fall into their hands.

With these considerations, I walked very leisurely forward. I

found that side of the island where I now was much pleasanter than

mine - the open or savannah fields sweet, adorned with flowers and

grass, and full of very fine woods. I saw abundance of parrots,

and fain I would have caught one, if possible, to have kept it to

be tame, and taught it to speak to me. I did, after some

painstaking, catch a young parrot, for I knocked it down with a

stick, and having recovered it, I brought it home; but it was some

years before I could make him speak; however, at last I taught him

to call me by name very familiarly. But the accident that

followed, though it be a trifle, will be very diverting in its

place.

I was exceedingly diverted with this journey. I found in the low

grounds hares (as I thought them to be) and foxes; but they

differed greatly from all the other kinds I had met with, nor could

I satisfy myself to eat them, though I killed several. But I had

no need to be venturous, for I had no want of food, and of that

which was very good too, especially these three sorts, viz. goats,

pigeons, and turtle, or tortoise, which added to my grapes,

Leadenhall market could not have furnished a table better than I,

in proportion to the company; and though my case was deplorable

enough, yet I had great cause for thankfulness that I was not

driven to any extremities for food, but had rather plenty, even to

dainties.

I never travelled in this journey above two miles outright in a

day, or thereabouts; but I took so many turns and re-turns to see

what discoveries I could make, that I came weary enough to the

place where I resolved to sit down all night; and then I either

reposed myself in a tree, or surrounded myself with a row of stakes

set upright in the ground, either from one tree to another, or so

as no wild creature could come at me without waking me.

As soon as I came to the sea-shore, I was surprised to see that I

had taken up my lot on the worst side of the island, for here,

indeed, the shore was covered with innumerable turtles, whereas on

the other side I had found but three in a year and a half. Here

was also an infinite number of fowls of many kinds, some which I

had seen, and some which I had not seen before, and many of them

very good meat, but such as I knew not the names of, except those

called penguins.

I could have shot as many as I pleased, but was very sparing of my

powder and shot, and therefore had more mind to kill a she-goat if

I could, which I could better feed on; and though there were many

goats here, more than on my side the island, yet it was with much

more difficulty that I could come near them, the country being flat

and even, and they saw me much sooner than when I was on the hills.

I confess this side of the country was much pleasanter than mine;

but yet I had not the least inclination to remove, for as I was

fixed in my habitation it became natural to me, and I seemed all

the while I was here to be as it were upon a journey, and from

home. However, I travelled along the shore of the sea towards the

east, I suppose about twelve miles, and then setting up a great

pole upon the shore for a mark, I concluded I would go home again,

and that the next journey I took should be on the other side of the

island east from my dwelling, and so round till I came to my post

again.

I took another way to come back than that I went, thinking I could

easily keep all the island so much in my view that I could not miss

finding my first dwelling by viewing the country; but I found

myself mistaken, for being come about two or three miles, I found

myself descended into a very large valley, but so surrounded with

hills, and those hills covered with wood, that I could not see

which was my way by any direction but that of the sun, nor even

then, unless I knew very well the position of the sun at that time

of the day. It happened, to my further misfortune, that the

weather proved hazy for three or four days while I was in the

valley, and not being able to see the sun, I wandered about very

uncomfortably, and at last was obliged to find the seaside, look

for my post, and come back the same way I went: and then, by easy

journeys, I turned homeward, the weather being exceeding hot, and

my gun, ammunition, hatchet, and other things very heavy.

In this journey my dog surprised a young kid, and seized upon it;

and I, running in to take hold of it, caught it, and saved it alive

from the dog. I had a great mind to bring it home if I could, for

I had often been musing whether it might not be possible to get a

kid or two, and so raise a breed of tame goats, which might supply

me when my powder and shot should be all spent. I made a collar

for this little creature, and with a string, which I made of some

rope-yam, which I always carried about me, I led him along, though

with some difficulty, till I came to my bower, and there I enclosed

him and left him, for I was very impatient to be at home, from

whence I had been absent above a month.

I cannot express what a satisfaction it was to me to come into my

old hutch, and lie down in my hammock-bed. This little wandering

journey, without settled place of abode, had been so unpleasant to

me, that my own house, as I called it to myself, was a perfect

settlement to me compared to that; and it rendered everything about

me so comfortable, that I resolved I would never go a great way

from it again while it should be my lot to stay on the island.

I reposed myself here a week, to rest and regale myself after my

long journey; during which most of the time was taken up in the

weighty affair of making a cage for my Poll, who began now to be a

mere domestic, and to be well acquainted with me. Then I began to

think of the poor kid which I had penned in within my little

circle, and resolved to go and fetch it home, or give it some food;

accordingly I went, and found it where I left it, for indeed it

could not get out, but was almost starved for want of food. I went

and cut boughs of trees, and branches of such shrubs as I could

find, and threw it over, and having fed it, I tied it as I did

before, to lead it away; but it was so tame with being hungry, that

I had no need to have tied it, for it followed me like a dog: and

as I continually fed it, the creature became so loving, so gentle,

and so fond, that it became from that time one of my domestics

also, and would never leave me afterwards.

The rainy season of the autumnal equinox was now come, and I kept

the 30th of September in the same solemn manner as before, being

the anniversary of my landing on the island, having now been there

two years, and no more prospect of being delivered than the first

day I came there, I spent the whole day in humble and thankful

acknowledgments of the many wonderful mercies which my solitary

condition was attended with, and without which it might have been

infinitely more miserable. I gave humble and hearty thanks that

God had been pleased to discover to me that it was possible I might

be more happy in this solitary condition than I should have been in

the liberty of society, and in all the pleasures of the world; that

He could fully make up to me the deficiencies of my solitary state,

and the want of human society, by His presence and the

communications of His grace to my soul; supporting, comforting, and

encouraging me to depend upon His providence here, and hope for His

eternal presence hereafter.

It was now that I began sensibly to feel how much more happy this

life I now led was, with all its miserable circumstances, than the

wicked, cursed, abominable life I led all the past part of my days;

and now I changed both my sorrows and my joys; my very desires

altered, my affections changed their gusts, and my delights were

perfectly new from what they were at my first coming, or, indeed,

for the two years past.

Before, as I walked about, either on my hunting or for viewing the

country, the anguish of my soul at my condition would break out

upon me on a sudden, and my very heart would die within me, to

think of the woods, the mountains, the deserts I was in, and how I

was a prisoner, locked up with the eternal bars and bolts of the

ocean, in an uninhabited wilderness, without redemption. In the

midst of the greatest composure of my mind, this would break out

upon me like a storm, and make me wring my hands and weep like a

child. Sometimes it would take me in the middle of my work, and I

would immediately sit down and sigh, and look upon the ground for

an hour or two together; and this was still worse to me, for if I

could burst out into tears, or vent myself by words, it would go

off, and the grief, having exhausted itself, would abate.

But now I began to exercise myself with new thoughts: I daily read

the word of God, and applied all the comforts of it to my present

state. One morning, being very sad, I opened the Bible upon these

words, "I will never, never leave thee, nor forsake thee."

Immediately it occurred that these words were to me; why else

should they be directed in such a manner, just at the moment when I

was mourning over my condition, as one forsaken of God and man?

"Well, then," said I, "if God does not forsake me, of what ill

consequence can it be, or what matters it, though the world should

all forsake me, seeing on the other hand, if I had all the world,

and should lose the favour and blessing of God, there would be no

comparison in the loss?"

From this moment I began to conclude in my mind that it was

possible for me to be more happy in this forsaken, solitary

condition than it was probable I should ever have been in any other

particular state in the world; and with this thought I was going to

give thanks to God for bringing me to this place. I know not what

it was, but something shocked my mind at that thought, and I durst

not speak the words. "How canst thou become such a hypocrite,"

said I, even audibly, "to pretend to be thankful for a condition

which, however thou mayest endeavour to be contented with, thou

wouldst rather pray heartily to be delivered from?" So I stopped

there; but though I could not say I thanked God for being there,

yet I sincerely gave thanks to God for opening my eyes, by whatever

afflicting providences, to see the former condition of my life, and

to mourn for my wickedness, and repent. I never opened the Bible,

or shut it, but my very soul within me blessed God for directing my

friend in England, without any order of mine, to pack it up among

my goods, and for assisting me afterwards to save it out of the

wreck of the ship.

Thus, and in this disposition of mind, I began my third year; and

though I have not given the reader the trouble of so particular an

account of my works this year as the first, yet in general it may

be observed that I was very seldom idle, but having regularly

divided my time according to the several daily employments that

were before me, such as: first, my duty to God, and the reading the

Scriptures, which I constantly set apart some time for thrice every

day; secondly, the going abroad with my gun for food, which

generally took me up three hours in every morning, when it did not

rain; thirdly, the ordering, cutting, preserving, and cooking what

I had killed or caught for my supply; these took up great part of

the day. Also, it is to be considered, that in the middle of the

day, when the sun was in the zenith, the violence of the heat was

too great to stir out; so that about four hours in the evening was

all the time I could be supposed to work in, with this exception,

that sometimes I changed my hours of hunting and working, and went

to work in the morning, and abroad with my gun in the afternoon.

To this short time allowed for labour I desire may be added the

exceeding laboriousness of my work; the many hours which, for want

of tools, want of help, and want of skill, everything I did took up

out of my time. For example, I was full two and forty days in

making a board for a long shelf, which I wanted in my cave;

whereas, two sawyers, with their tools and a saw-pit, would have

cut six of them out of the same tree in half a day.

My case was this: it was to be a large tree which was to be cut

down, because my board was to be a broad one. This tree I was

three days in cutting down, and two more cutting off the boughs,

and reducing it to a log or piece of timber. With inexpressible

hacking and hewing I reduced both the sides of it into chips till

it began to be light enough to move; then I turned it, and made one

side of it smooth and flat as a board from end to end; then,

turning that side downward, cut the other side til I brought the

plank to be about three inches thick, and smooth on both sides.

Any one may judge the labour of my hands in such a piece of work;

but labour and patience carried me through that, and many other

things. I only observe this in particular, to show the reason why

so much of my time went away with so little work - viz. that what

might be a little to be done with help and tools, was a vast labour

and required a prodigious time to do alone, and by hand. But

notwithstanding this, with patience and labour I got through

everything that my circumstances made necessary to me to do, as

will appear by what follows.

I was now, in the months of November and December, expecting my

crop of barley and rice. The ground I had manured and dug up for

them was not great; for, as I observed, my seed of each was not

above the quantity of half a peck, for I had lost one whole crop by

sowing in the dry season. But now my crop promised very well, when

on a sudden I found I was in danger of losing it all again by

enemies of several sorts, which it was scarcely possible to keep

from it; as, first, the goats, and wild creatures which I called

hares, who, tasting the sweetness of the blade, lay in it night and

day, as soon as it came up, and eat it so close, that it could get

no time to shoot up into stalk.

This I saw no remedy for but by making an enclosure about it with a

hedge; which I did with a great deal of toil, and the more, because

it required speed. However, as my arable land was but small,

suited to my crop, I got it totally well fenced in about three

weeks' time; and shooting some of the creatures in the daytime, I

set my dog to guard it in the night, tying him up to a stake at the

gate, where he would stand and bark all night long; so in a little

time the enemies forsook the place, and the corn grew very strong

and well, and began to ripen apace.

But as the beasts ruined me before, while my corn was in the blade,

so the birds were as likely to ruin me now, when it was in the ear;

for, going along by the place to see how it throve, I saw my little

crop surrounded with fowls, of I know not how many sorts, who

stood, as it were, watching till I should be gone. I immediately

let fly among them, for I always had my gun with me. I had no

sooner shot, but there rose up a little cloud of fowls, which I had

not seen at all, from among the corn itself.

This touched me sensibly, for I foresaw that in a few days they

would devour all my hopes; that I should be starved, and never be

able to raise a crop at all; and what to do I could not tell;

however, I resolved not to lose my corn, if possible, though I

should watch it night and day. In the first place, I went among it

to see what damage was already done, and found they had spoiled a

good deal of it; but that as it was yet too green for them, the

loss was not so great but that the remainder was likely to be a

good crop if it could be saved.

I stayed by it to load my gun, and then coming away, I could easily

see the thieves sitting upon all the trees about me, as if they

only waited till I was gone away, and the event proved it to be so;

for as I walked off, as if I was gone, I was no sooner out of their

sight than they dropped down one by one into the corn again. I was

so provoked, that I could not have patience to stay till more came

on, knowing that every grain that they ate now was, as it might be

said, a peck-loaf to me in the consequence; but coming up to the

hedge, I fired again, and killed three of them. This was what I

wished for; so I took them up, and served them as we serve

notorious thieves in England - hanged them in chains, for a terror

to of them. It is impossible to imagine that this should have such

an effect as it had, for the fowls would not only not come at the

corn, but, in short, they forsook all that part of the island, and

I could never see a bird near the place as long as my scarecrows

hung there. This I was very glad of, you may be sure, and about

the latter end of December, which was our second harvest of the

year, I reaped my corn.

I was sadly put to it for a scythe or sickle to cut it down, and

all I could do was to make one, as well as I could, out of one of

the broadswords, or cutlasses, which I saved among the arms out of

the ship. However, as my first crop was but small, I had no great

difficulty to cut it down; in short, I reaped it in my way, for I

cut nothing off but the ears, and carried it away in a great basket

which I had made, and so rubbed it out with my hands; and at the

end of all my harvesting, I found that out of my half-peck of seed

I had near two bushels of rice, and about two bushels and a half of

barley; that is to say, by my guess, for I had no measure at that

time.

However, this was a great encouragement to me, and I foresaw that,

in time, it would please God to supply me with bread. And yet here

I was perplexed again, for I neither knew how to grind or make meal

of my corn, or indeed how to clean it and part it; nor, if made

into meal, how to make bread of it; and if how to make it, yet I

knew not how to bake it. These things being added to my desire of

having a good quantity for store, and to secure a constant supply,

I resolved not to taste any of this crop but to preserve it all for

seed against the next season; and in the meantime to employ all my

study and hours of working to accomplish this great work of

providing myself with corn and bread.

It might be truly said, that now I worked for my bread. I believe

few people have thought much upon the strange multitude of little

things necessary in the providing, producing, curing, dressing,

making, and finishing this one article of bread.

I, that was reduced to a mere state of nature, found this to my

daily discouragement; and was made more sensible of it every hour,

even after I had got the first handful of seed-corn, which, as I

have said, came up unexpectedly, and indeed to a surprise.

First, I had no plough to turn up the earth - no spade or shovel to

dig it. Well, this I conquered by making me a wooden spade, as I

observed before; but this did my work but in a wooden manner; and

though it cost me a great many days to make it, yet, for want of

iron, it not only wore out soon, but made my work the harder, and

made it be performed much worse. However, this I bore with, and

was content to work it out with patience, and bear with the badness

of the performance. When the corn was sown, I had no harrow, but

was forced to go over it myself, and drag a great heavy bough of a

tree over it, to scratch it, as it may be called, rather than rake

or harrow it. When it was growing, and grown, I have observed

already how many things I wanted to fence it, secure it, mow or

reap it, cure and carry it home, thrash, part it from the chaff,

and save it. Then I wanted a mill to grind it sieves to dress it,

yeast and salt to make it into bread, and an oven to bake it; but

all these things I did without, as shall be observed; and yet the

corn was an inestimable comfort and advantage to me too. All this,

as I said, made everything laborious and tedious to me; but that

there was no help for. Neither was my time so much loss to me,

because, as I had divided it, a certain part of it was every day

appointed to these works; and as I had resolved to use none of the

corn for bread till I had a greater quantity by me, I had the next

six months to apply myself wholly, by labour and invention, to

furnish myself with utensils proper for the performing all the

operations necessary for making the corn, when I had it, fit for my

use.

CHAPTER IX - A BOAT

BUT first I was to prepare more land, for I had now seed enough to

sow above an acre of ground. Before I did this, I had a week's

work at least to make me a spade, which, when it was done, was but

a sorry one indeed, and very heavy, and required double labour to

work with it. However, I got through that, and sowed my seed in

two large flat pieces of ground, as near my house as I could find

them to my mind, and fenced them in with a good hedge, the stakes

of which were all cut off that wood which I had set before, and

knew it would grow; so that, in a year's time, I knew I should have

a quick or living hedge, that would want but little repair. This

work did not take me up less than three months, because a great

part of that time was the wet season, when I could not go abroad.

Within-doors, that is when it rained and I could not go out, I

found employment in the following occupations - always observing,

that all the while I was at work I diverted myself with talking to

my parrot, and teaching him to speak; and I quickly taught him to

know his own name, and at last to speak it out pretty loud, "Poll,"

which was the first word I ever heard spoken in the island by any

mouth but my own. This, therefore, was not my work, but an

assistance to my work; for now, as I said, I had a great employment

upon my hands, as follows: I had long studied to make, by some

means or other, some earthen vessels, which, indeed, I wanted

sorely, but knew not where to come at them. However, considering

the heat of the climate, I did not doubt but if I could find out

any clay, I might make some pots that might, being dried in the

sun, be hard enough and strong enough to bear handling, and to hold

anything that was dry, and required to be kept so; and as this was

necessary in the preparing corn, meal, &c., which was the thing I

was doing, I resolved to make some as large as I could, and fit

only to stand like jars, to hold what should be put into them.

It would make the reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell

how many awkward ways I took to raise this paste; what odd,

misshapen, ugly things I made; how many of them fell in and how

many fell out, the clay not being stiff enough to bear its own

weight; how many cracked by the over-violent heat of the sun, being

set out too hastily; and how many fell in pieces with only

removing, as well before as after they were dried; and, in a word,

how, after having laboured hard to find the clay - to dig it, to

temper it, to bring it home, and work it - I could not make above

two large earthen ugly things (I cannot call them jars) in about

two months' labour.

However, as the sun baked these two very dry and hard, I lifted

them very gently up, and set them down again in two great wicker

baskets, which I had made on purpose for them, that they might not

break; and as between the pot and the basket there was a little

room to spare, I stuffed it full of the rice and barley straw; and

these two pots being to stand always dry I thought would hold my

dry corn, and perhaps the meal, when the corn was bruised.

Though I miscarried so much in my design for large pots, yet I made

several smaller things with better success; such as little round

pots, flat dishes, pitchers, and pipkins, and any things my hand

turned to; and the heat of the sun baked them quite hard.

But all this would not answer my end, which was to get an earthen

pot to hold what was liquid, and bear the fire, which none of these

could do. It happened after some time, making a pretty large fire

for cooking my meat, when I went to put it out after I had done

with it, I found a broken piece of one of my earthenware vessels in

the fire, burnt as hard as a stone, and red as a tile. I was

agreeably surprised to see it, and said to myself, that certainly

they might be made to burn whole, if they would burn broken.

This set me to study how to order my fire, so as to make it burn

some pots. I had no notion of a kiln, such as the potters burn in,

or of glazing them with lead, though I had some lead to do it with;

but I placed three large pipkins and two or three pots in a pile,

one upon another, and placed my firewood all round it, with a great

heap of embers under them. I plied the fire with fresh fuel round

the outside and upon the top, till I saw the pots in the inside

red-hot quite through, and observed that they did not crack at all.

When I saw them clear red, I let them stand in that heat about five

or six hours, till I found one of them, though it did not crack,

did melt or run; for the sand which was mixed with the clay melted

by the violence of the heat, and would have run into glass if I had

gone on; so I slacked my fire gradually till the pots began to

abate of the red colour; and watching them all night, that I might

not let the fire abate too fast, in the morning I had three very

good (I will not say handsome) pipkins, and two other earthen pots,

as hard burnt as could be desired, and one of them perfectly glazed

with the running of the sand.

After this experiment, I need not say that I wanted no sort of

earthenware for my use; but I must needs say as to the shapes of

them, they were very indifferent, as any one may suppose, when I

had no way of making them but as the children make dirt pies, or as

a woman would make pies that never learned to raise paste.

No joy at a thing of so mean a nature was ever equal to mine, when

I found I had made an earthen pot that would bear the fire; and I

had hardly patience to stay till they were cold before I set one on

the fire again with some water in it to boil me some meat, which it

did admirably well; and with a piece of a kid I made some very good

broth, though I wanted oatmeal, and several other ingredients

requisite to make it as good as I would have had it been.

My next concern was to get me a stone mortar to stamp or beat some

corn in; for as to the mill, there was no thought of arriving at

that perfection of art with one pair of hands. To supply this

want, I was at a great loss; for, of all the trades in the world, I

was as perfectly unqualified for a stone-cutter as for any

whatever; neither had I any tools to go about it with. I spent

many a day to find out a great stone big enough to cut hollow, and

make fit for a mortar, and could find none at all, except what was

in the solid rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out; nor

indeed were the rocks in the island of hardness sufficient, but

were all of a sandy, crumbling stone, which neither would bear the

weight of a heavy pestle, nor would break the corn without filling

it with sand. So, after a great deal of time lost in searching for

a stone, I gave it over, and resolved to look out for a great block

of hard wood, which I found, indeed, much easier; and getting one

as big as I had strength to stir, I rounded it, and formed it on

the outside with my axe and hatchet, and then with the help of fire

and infinite labour, made a hollow place in it, as the Indians in

Brazil make their canoes. After this, I made a great heavy pestle

or beater of the wood called the iron-wood; and this I prepared and

laid by against I had my next crop of corn, which I proposed to

myself to grind, or rather pound into meal to make bread.

My next difficulty was to make a sieve or searce, to dress my meal,

and to part it from the bran and the husk; without which I did not

see it possible I could have any bread. This was a most difficult

thing even to think on, for to be sure I had nothing like the

necessary thing to make it - I mean fine thin canvas or stuff to

searce the meal through. And here I was at a full stop for many

months; nor did I really know what to do. Linen I had none left

but what was mere rags; I had goat's hair, but neither knew how to

weave it or spin it; and had I known how, here were no tools to

work it with. All the remedy that I found for this was, that at

last I did remember I had, among the seamen's clothes which were

saved out of the ship, some neckcloths of calico or muslin; and

with some pieces of these I made three small sieves proper enough

for the work; and thus I made shift for some years: how I did

afterwards, I shall show in its place.

The baking part was the next thing to be considered, and how I

should make bread when I came to have corn; for first, I had no

yeast. As to that part, there was no supplying the want, so I did

not concern myself much about it. But for an oven I was indeed in

great pain. At length I found out an experiment for that also,

which was this: I made some earthen-vessels very broad but not

deep, that is to say, about two feet diameter, and not above nine

inches deep. These I burned in the fire, as I had done the other,

and laid them by; and when I wanted to bake, I made a great fire

upon my hearth, which I had paved with some square tiles of my own

baking and burning also; but I should not call them square.

When the firewood was burned pretty much into embers or live coals,

I drew them forward upon this hearth, so as to cover it all over,

and there I let them lie till the hearth was very hot. Then

sweeping away all the embers, I set down my loaf or loaves, and

whelming down the earthen pot upon them, drew the embers all round

the outside of the pot, to keep in and add to the heat; and thus as

well as in the best oven in the world, I baked my barley-loaves,

and became in little time a good pastrycook into the bargain; for I

made myself several cakes and puddings of the rice; but I made no

pies, neither had I anything to put into them supposing I had,

except the flesh either of fowls or goats.

It need not be wondered at if all these things took me up most part

of the third year of my abode here; for it is to be observed that

in the intervals of these things I had my new harvest and husbandry

to manage; for I reaped my corn in its season, and carried it home

as well as I could, and laid it up in the ear, in my large baskets,

till I had time to rub it out, for I had no floor to thrash it on,

or instrument to thrash it with.

And now, indeed, my stock of corn increasing, I really wanted to

build my barns bigger; I wanted a place to lay it up in, for the

increase of the corn now yielded me so much, that I had of the

barley about twenty bushels, and of the rice as much or more;

insomuch that now I resolved to begin to use it freely; for my

bread had been quite gone a great while; also I resolved to see

what quantity would be sufficient for me a whole year, and to sow

but once a year.

Upon the whole, I found that the forty bushels of barley and rice

were much more than I could consume in a year; so I resolved to sow

just the same quantity every year that I sowed the last, in hopes

that such a quantity would fully provide me with bread, &c.

All the while these things were doing, you may be sure my thoughts

ran many times upon the prospect of land which I had seen from the

other side of the island; and I was not without secret wishes that

I were on shore there, fancying that, seeing the mainland, and an

inhabited country, I might find some way or other to convey myself

further, and perhaps at last find some means of escape.

But all this while I made no allowance for the dangers of such an

undertaking, and how I might fall into the hands of savages, and

perhaps such as I might have reason to think far worse than the

lions and tigers of Africa: that if I once came in their power, I

should run a hazard of more than a thousand to one of being killed,

and perhaps of being eaten; for I had heard that the people of the

Caribbean coast were cannibals or man-eaters, and I knew by the

latitude that I could not be far from that shore. Then, supposing

they were not cannibals, yet they might kill me, as many Europeans

who had fallen into their hands had been served, even when they had

been ten or twenty together - much more I, that was but one, and

could make little or no defence; all these things, I say, which I

ought to have considered well; and did come into my thoughts

afterwards, yet gave me no apprehensions at first, and my head ran

mightily upon the thought of getting over to the shore.

Now I wished for my boy Xury, and the long-boat with shoulder-of-

mutton sail, with which I sailed above a thousand miles on the

coast of Africa; but this was in vain: then I thought I would go

and look at our ship's boat, which, as I have said, was blown up

upon the shore a great way, in the storm, when we were first cast

away. She lay almost where she did at first, but not quite; and

was turned, by the force of the waves and the winds, almost bottom

upward, against a high ridge of beachy, rough sand, but no water

about her. If I had had hands to have refitted her, and to have

launched her into the water, the boat would have done well enough,

and I might have gone back into the Brazils with her easily enough;

but I might have foreseen that I could no more turn her and set her

upright upon her bottom than I could remove the island; however, I

went to the woods, and cut levers and rollers, and brought them to

the boat resolving to try what I could do; suggesting to myself

that if I could but turn her down, I might repair the damage she

had received, and she would be a very good boat, and I might go to

sea in her very easily.

I spared no pains, indeed, in this piece of fruitless toil, and

spent, I think, three or four weeks about it; at last finding it

impossible to heave it up with my little strength, I fell to

digging away the sand, to undermine it, and so to make it fall

down, setting pieces of wood to thrust and guide it right in the

fall.

But when I had done this, I was unable to stir it up again, or to

get under it, much less to move it forward towards the water; so I

was forced to give it over; and yet, though I gave over the hopes

of the boat, my desire to venture over for the main increased,

rather than decreased, as the means for it seemed impossible.

This at length put me upon thinking whether it was not possible to

make myself a canoe, or periagua, such as the natives of those

climates make, even without tools, or, as I might say, without

hands, of the trunk of a great tree. This I not only thought

possible, but easy, and pleased myself extremely with the thoughts

of making it, and with my having much more convenience for it than

any of the negroes or Indians; but not at all considering the

particular inconveniences which I lay under more than the Indians

did - viz. want of hands to move it, when it was made, into the

water - a difficulty much harder for me to surmount than all the

consequences of want of tools could be to them; for what was it to

me, if when I had chosen a vast tree in the woods, and with much

trouble cut it down, if I had been able with my tools to hew and

dub the outside into the proper shape of a boat, and burn or cut

out the inside to make it hollow, so as to make a boat of it - if,

after all this, I must leave it just there where I found it, and

not be able to launch it into the water?

One would have thought I could not have had the least reflection

upon my mind of my circumstances while I was making this boat, but

I should have immediately thought how I should get it into the sea;

but my thoughts were so intent upon my voyage over the sea in it,

that I never once considered how I should get it off the land: and

it was really, in its own nature, more easy for me to guide it over

forty-five miles of sea than about forty-five fathoms of land,

where it lay, to set it afloat in the water.

I went to work upon this boat the most like a fool that ever man

did who had any of his senses awake. I pleased myself with the

design, without determining whether I was ever able to undertake

it; not but that the difficulty of launching my boat came often

into my head; but I put a stop to my inquiries into it by this

foolish answer which I gave myself - "Let me first make it; I

warrant I will find some way or other to get it along when it is

done."

This was a most preposterous method; but the eagerness of my fancy

prevailed, and to work I went. I felled a cedar-tree, and I

question much whether Solomon ever had such a one for the building

of the Temple of Jerusalem; it was five feet ten inches diameter at

the lower part next the stump, and four feet eleven inches diameter

at the end of twenty-two feet; after which it lessened for a while,

and then parted into branches. It was not without infinite labour

that I felled this tree; I was twenty days hacking and hewing at it

at the bottom; I was fourteen more getting the branches and limbs

and the vast spreading head cut off, which I hacked and hewed

through with axe and hatchet, and inexpressible labour; after this,

it cost me a month to shape it and dub it to a proportion, and to

something like the bottom of a boat, that it might swim upright as

it ought to do. It cost me near three months more to clear the

inside, and work it out so as to make an exact boat of it; this I

did, indeed, without fire, by mere mallet and chisel, and by the

dint of hard labour, till I had brought it to be a very handsome

periagua, and big enough to have carried six-and-twenty men, and

consequently big enough to have carried me and all my cargo.

When I had gone through this work I was extremely delighted with

it. The boat was really much bigger than ever I saw a canoe or

periagua, that was made of one tree, in my life. Many a weary

stroke it had cost, you may be sure; and had I gotten it into the

water, I make no question, but I should have begun the maddest

voyage, and the most unlikely to be performed, that ever was

undertaken.

But all my devices to get it into the water failed me; though they

cost me infinite labour too. It lay about one hundred yards from

the water, and not more; but the first inconvenience was, it was up

hill towards the creek. Well, to take away this discouragement, I

resolved to dig into the surface of the earth, and so make a

declivity: this I began, and it cost me a prodigious deal of pains

(but who grudge pains who have their deliverance in view?); but

when this was worked through, and this difficulty managed, it was

still much the same, for I could no more stir the canoe than I

could the other boat. Then I measured the distance of ground, and

resolved to cut a dock or canal, to bring the water up to the

canoe, seeing I could not bring the canoe down to the water. Well,

I began this work; and when I began to enter upon it, and calculate

how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the stuff was to be

thrown out, I found that, by the number of hands I had, being none

but my own, it must have been ten or twelve years before I could

have gone through with it; for the shore lay so high, that at the

upper end it must have been at least twenty feet deep; so at

length, though with great reluctancy, I gave this attempt over

also.

This grieved me heartily; and now I saw, though too late, the folly

of beginning a work before we count the cost, and before we judge

rightly of our own strength to go through with it.

In the middle of this work I finished my fourth year in this place,

and kept my anniversary with the same devotion, and with as much

comfort as ever before; for, by a constant study and serious

application to the Word of God, and by the assistance of His grace,

I gained a different knowledge from what I had before. I

entertained different notions of things. I looked now upon the

world as a thing remote, which I had nothing to do with, no

expectations from, and, indeed, no desires about: in a word, I had

nothing indeed to do with it, nor was ever likely to have, so I

thought it looked, as we may perhaps look upon it hereafter - viz.

as a place I had lived in, but was come out of it; and well might I

say, as Father Abraham to Dives, "Between me and thee is a great

gulf fixed."

In the first place, I was removed from all the wickedness of the

world here; I had neither the lusts of the flesh, the lusts of the

eye, nor the pride of life. I had nothing to covet, for I had all

that I was now capable of enjoying; I was lord of the whole manor;

or, if I pleased, I might call myself king or emperor over the

whole country which I had possession of: there were no rivals; I

had no competitor, none to dispute sovereignty or command with me:

I might have raised ship-loadings of corn, but I had no use for it;

so I let as little grow as I thought enough for my occasion. I had

tortoise or turtle enough, but now and then one was as much as I

could put to any use: I had timber enough to have built a fleet of

ships; and I had grapes enough to have made wine, or to have cured

into raisins, to have loaded that fleet when it had been built.

But all I could make use of was all that was valuable: I had enough

to eat and supply my wants, and what was all the rest to me? If I

killed more flesh than I could eat, the dog must eat it, or vermin;

if I sowed more corn than I could eat, it must be spoiled; the

trees that I cut down were lying to rot on the ground; I could make

no more use of them but for fuel, and that I had no occasion for

but to dress my food.

In a word, the nature and experience of things dictated to me, upon

just reflection, that all the good things of this world are no

farther good to us than they are for our use; and that, whatever we

may heap up to give others, we enjoy just as much as we can use,

and no more. The most covetous, griping miser in the world would

have been cured of the vice of covetousness if he had been in my

case; for I possessed infinitely more than I knew what to do with.

I had no room for desire, except it was of things which I had not,

and they were but trifles, though, indeed, of great use to me. I

had, as I hinted before, a parcel of money, as well gold as silver,

about thirty-six pounds sterling. Alas! there the sorry, useless

stuff lay; I had no more manner of business for it; and often

thought with myself that I would have given a handful of it for a

gross of tobacco-pipes; or for a hand-mill to grind my corn; nay, I

would have given it all for a sixpenny-worth of turnip and carrot

seed out of England, or for a handful of peas and beans, and a

bottle of ink. As it was, I had not the least advantage by it or

benefit from it; but there it lay in a drawer, and grew mouldy with

the damp of the cave in the wet seasons; and if I had had the

drawer full of diamonds, it had been the same case - they had been

of no manner of value to me, because of no use.

I had now brought my state of life to be much easier in itself than

it was at first, and much easier to my mind, as well as to my body.

I frequently sat down to meat with thankfulness, and admired the

hand of God's providence, which had thus spread my table in the

wilderness. I learned to look more upon the bright side of my

condition, and less upon the dark side, and to consider what I

enjoyed rather than what I wanted; and this gave me sometimes such

secret comforts, that I cannot express them; and which I take

notice of here, to put those discontented people in mind of it, who

cannot enjoy comfortably what God has given them, because they see

and covet something that He has not given them. All our

discontents about what we want appeared to me to spring from the

want of thankfulness for what we have.

Another reflection was of great use to me, and doubtless would be

so to any one that should fall into such distress as mine was; and

this was, to compare my present condition with what I at first

expected it would be; nay, with what it would certainly have been,

if the good providence of God had not wonderfully ordered the ship

to be cast up nearer to the shore, where I not only could come at

her, but could bring what I got out of her to the shore, for my

relief and comfort; without which, I had wanted for tools to work,

weapons for defence, and gunpowder and shot for getting my food.

I spent whole hours, I may say whole days, in representing to

myself, in the most lively colours, how I must have acted if I had

got nothing out of the ship. How I could not have so much as got

any food, except fish and turtles; and that, as it was long before

I found any of them, I must have perished first; that I should have

lived, if I had not perished, like a mere savage; that if I had

killed a goat or a fowl, by any contrivance, I had no way to flay

or open it, or part the flesh from the skin and the bowels, or to

cut it up; but must gnaw it with my teeth, and pull it with my

claws, like a beast.

These reflections made me very sensible of the goodness of

Providence to me, and very thankful for my present condition, with

all its hardships and misfortunes; and this part also I cannot but

recommend to the reflection of those who are apt, in their misery,

to say, "Is any affliction like mine?" Let them consider how much

worse the cases of some people are, and their case might have been,

if Providence had thought fit.

I had another reflection, which assisted me also to comfort my mind

with hopes; and this was comparing my present situation with what I

had deserved, and had therefore reason to expect from the hand of

Providence. I had lived a dreadful life, perfectly destitute of

the knowledge and fear of God. I had been well instructed by

father and mother; neither had they been wanting to me in their

early endeavours to infuse a religious awe of God into my mind, a

sense of my duty, and what the nature and end of my being required

of me. But, alas! falling early into the seafaring life, which of

all lives is the most destitute of the fear of God, though His

terrors are always before them; I say, falling early into the

seafaring life, and into seafaring company, all that little sense

of religion which I had entertained was laughed out of me by my

messmates; by a hardened despising of dangers, and the views of

death, which grew habitual to me by my long absence from all manner

of opportunities to converse with anything but what was like

myself, or to hear anything that was good or tended towards it.

So void was I of everything that was good, or the least sense of

what I was, or was to be, that, in the greatest deliverances I

enjoyed - such as my escape from Sallee; my being taken up by the

Portuguese master of the ship; my being planted so well in the

Brazils; my receiving the cargo from England, and the like - I

never had once the words "Thank God!" so much as on my mind, or in

my mouth; nor in the greatest distress had I so much as a thought

to pray to Him, or so much as to say, "Lord, have mercy upon me!"

no, nor to mention the name of God, unless it was to swear by, and

blaspheme it.

I had terrible reflections upon my mind for many months, as I have

already observed, on account of my wicked and hardened life past;

and when I looked about me, and considered what particular

providences had attended me since my coming into this place, and

how God had dealt bountifully with me - had not only punished me

less than my iniquity had deserved, but had so plentifully provided

for me - this gave me great hopes that my repentance was accepted,

and that God had yet mercy in store for me.

With these reflections I worked my mind up, not only to a

resignation to the will of God in the present disposition of my

circumstances, but even to a sincere thankfulness for my condition;

and that I, who was yet a living man, ought not to complain, seeing

I had not the due punishment of my sins; that I enjoyed so many

mercies which I had no reason to have expected in that place; that

I ought never more to repine at my condition, but to rejoice, and

to give daily thanks for that daily bread, which nothing but a

crowd of wonders could have brought; that I ought to consider I had

been fed even by a miracle, even as great as that of feeding Elijah

by ravens, nay, by a long series of miracles; and that I could

hardly have named a place in the uninhabitable part of the world

where I could have been cast more to my advantage; a place where,

as I had no society, which was my affliction on one hand, so I

found no ravenous beasts, no furious wolves or tigers, to threaten

my life; no venomous creatures, or poisons, which I might feed on

to my hurt; no savages to murder and devour me. In a word, as my

life was a life of sorrow one way, so it was a life of mercy

another; and I wanted nothing to make it a life of comfort but to

be able to make my sense of God's goodness to me, and care over me

in this condition, be my daily consolation; and after I did make a

just improvement on these things, I went away, and was no more sad.

I had now been here so long that many things which I had brought on

shore for my help were either quite gone, or very much wasted and

near spent.

My ink, as I observed, had been gone some time, all but a very

little, which I eked out with water, a little and a little, till it

was so pale, it scarce left any appearance of black upon the paper.

As long as it lasted I made use of it to minute down the days of

the month on which any remarkable thing happened to me; and first,

by casting up times past, I remembered that there was a strange

concurrence of days in the various providences which befell me, and

which, if I had been superstitiously inclined to observe days as

fatal or fortunate, I might have had reason to have looked upon

with a great deal of curiosity.

First, I had observed that the same day that I broke away from my

father and friends and ran away to Hull, in order to go to sea, the

same day afterwards I was taken by the Sallee man-of-war, and made

a slave; the same day of the year that I escaped out of the wreck

of that ship in Yarmouth Roads, that same day-year afterwards I

made my escape from Sallee in a boat; the same day of the year I

was born on - viz. the 30th of September, that same day I had my

life so miraculously saved twenty-six years after, when I was cast

on shore in this island; so that my wicked life and my solitary

life began both on a day.

The next thing to my ink being wasted was that of my bread - I mean

the biscuit which I brought out of the ship; this I had husbanded

to the last degree, allowing myself but one cake of bread a-day for

above a year; and yet I was quite without bread for near a year

before I got any corn of my own, and great reason I had to be

thankful that I had any at all, the getting it being, as has been

already observed, next to miraculous.

My clothes, too, began to decay; as to linen, I had had none a good

while, except some chequered shirts which I found in the chests of

the other seamen, and which I carefully preserved; because many

times I could bear no other clothes on but a shirt; and it was a

very great help to me that I had, among all the men's clothes of

the ship, almost three dozen of shirts. There were also, indeed,

several thick watch-coats of the seamen's which were left, but they

were too hot to wear; and though it is true that the weather was so

violently hot that there was no need of clothes, yet I could not go

quite naked - no, though I had been inclined to it, which I was not

- nor could I abide the thought of it, though I was alone. The

reason why I could not go naked was, I could not bear the heat of

the sun so well when quite naked as with some clothes on; nay, the

very heat frequently blistered my skin: whereas, with a shirt on,

the air itself made some motion, and whistling under the shirt, was

twofold cooler than without it. No more could I ever bring myself

to go out in the heat of the sun without a cap or a hat; the heat

of the sun, beating with such violence as it does in that place,

would give me the headache presently, by darting so directly on my

head, without a cap or hat on, so that I could not bear it;

whereas, if I put on my hat it would presently go away.

Upon these views I began to consider about putting the few rags I

had, which I called clothes, into some order; I had worn out all

the waistcoats I had, and my business was now to try if I could not

make jackets out of the great watch-coats which I had by me, and

with such other materials as I had; so I set to work, tailoring, or

rather, indeed, botching, for I made most piteous work of it.

However, I made shift to make two or three new waistcoats, which I

hoped would serve me a great while: as for breeches or drawers, I

made but a very sorry shift indeed till afterwards.

I have mentioned that I saved the skins of all the creatures that I

killed, I mean four-footed ones, and I had them hung up, stretched

out with sticks in the sun, by which means some of them were so dry

and hard that they were fit for little, but others were very

useful. The first thing I made of these was a great cap for my

head, with the hair on the outside, to shoot off the rain; and this

I performed so well, that after I made me a suit of clothes wholly

of these skins - that is to say, a waistcoat, and breeches open at

the knees, and both loose, for they were rather wanting to keep me

cool than to keep me warm. I must not omit to acknowledge that

they were wretchedly made; for if I was a bad carpenter, I was a

worse tailor. However, they were such as I made very good shift

with, and when I was out, if it happened to rain, the hair of my

waistcoat and cap being outermost, I was kept very dry.

After this, I spent a great deal of time and pains to make an

umbrella; I was, indeed, in great want of one, and had a great mind

to make one; I had seen them made in the Brazils, where they are

very useful in the great heats there, and I felt the heats every

jot as great here, and greater too, being nearer the equinox;

besides, as I was obliged to be much abroad, it was a most useful

thing to me, as well for the rains as the heats. I took a world of

pains with it, and was a great while before I could make anything

likely to hold: nay, after I had thought I had hit the way, I

spoiled two or three before I made one to my mind: but at last I

made one that answered indifferently well: the main difficulty I

found was to make it let down. I could make it spread, but if it

did not let down too, and draw in, it was not portable for me any

way but just over my head, which would not do. However, at last,

as I said, I made one to answer, and covered it with skins, the

hair upwards, so that it cast off the rain like a pent-house, and

kept off the sun so effectually, that I could walk out in the

hottest of the weather with greater advantage than I could before

in the coolest, and when I had no need of it could close it, and

carry it under my arm

Thus I lived mighty comfortably, my mind being entirely composed by

resigning myself to the will of God, and throwing myself wholly

upon the disposal of His providence. This made my life better than

sociable, for when I began to regret the want of conversation I

would ask myself, whether thus conversing mutually with my own

thoughts, and (as I hope I may say) with even God Himself, by

ejaculations, was not better than the utmost enjoyment of human

society in the world?

CHAPTER X - TAMES GOATS

I CANNOT say that after this, for five years, any extraordinary

thing happened to me, but I lived on in the same course, in the

same posture and place, as before; the chief things I was employed

in, besides my yearly labour of planting my barley and rice, and

curing my raisins, of both which I always kept up just enough to

have sufficient stock of one year's provisions beforehand; I say,

besides this yearly labour, and my daily pursuit of going out with

my gun, I had one labour, to make a canoe, which at last I

finished: so that, by digging a canal to it of six feet wide and

four feet deep, I brought it into the creek, almost half a mile.

As for the first, which was so vastly big, for I made it without

considering beforehand, as I ought to have done, how I should be

able to launch it, so, never being able to bring it into the water,

or bring the water to it, I was obliged to let it lie where it was

as a memorandum to teach me to be wiser the next time: indeed, the

next time, though I could not get a tree proper for it, and was in

a place where I could not get the water to it at any less distance

than, as I have said, near half a mile, yet, as I saw it was

practicable at last, I never gave it over; and though I was near

two years about it, yet I never grudged my labour, in hopes of

having a boat to go off to sea at last.

However, though my little periagua was finished, yet the size of it

was not at all answerable to the design which I had in view when I

made the first; I mean of venturing over to the TERRA FIRMA, where

it was above forty miles broad; accordingly, the smallness of my

boat assisted to put an end to that design, and now I thought no

more of it. As I had a boat, my next design was to make a cruise

round the island; for as I had been on the other side in one place,

crossing, as I have already described it, over the land, so the

discoveries I made in that little journey made me very eager to see

other parts of the coast; and now I had a boat, I thought of

nothing but sailing round the island.

For this purpose, that I might do everything with discretion and

consideration, I fitted up a little mast in my boat, and made a

sail too out of some of the pieces of the ship's sails which lay in

store, and of which I had a great stock by me. Having fitted my

mast and sail, and tried the boat, I found she would sail very

well; then I made little lockers or boxes at each end of my boat,

to put provisions, necessaries, ammunition, &c., into, to be kept

dry, either from rain or the spray of the sea; and a little, long,

hollow place I cut in the inside of the boat, where I could lay my

gun, making a flap to hang down over it to keep it dry.

I fixed my umbrella also in the step at the stern, like a mast, to

stand over my head, and keep the heat of the sun off me, like an

awning; and thus I every now and then took a little voyage upon the

sea, but never went far out, nor far from the little creek. At

last, being eager to view the circumference of my little kingdom, I

resolved upon my cruise; and accordingly I victualled my ship for

the voyage, putting in two dozen of loaves (cakes I should call

them) of barley-bread, an earthen pot full of parched rice (a food

I ate a good deal of), a little bottle of rum, half a goat, and

powder and shot for killing more, and two large watch-coats, of

those which, as I mentioned before, I had saved out of the seamen's

chests; these I took, one to lie upon, and the other to cover me in

the night.

It was the 6th of November, in the sixth year of my reign - or my

captivity, which you please - that I set out on this voyage, and I

found it much longer than I expected; for though the island itself

was not very large, yet when I came to the east side of it, I found

a great ledge of rocks lie out about two leagues into the sea, some

above water, some under it; and beyond that a shoal of sand, lying

dry half a league more, so that I was obliged to go a great way out

to sea to double the point.

When I first discovered them, I was going to give over my

enterprise, and come back again, not knowing how far it might

oblige me to go out to sea; and above all, doubting how I should

get back again: so I came to an anchor; for I had made a kind of an

anchor with a piece of a broken grappling which I got out of the

ship.

Having secured my boat, I took my gun and went on shore, climbing

up a hill, which seemed to overlook that point where I saw the full

extent of it, and resolved to venture.

In my viewing the sea from that hill where I stood, I perceived a

strong, and indeed a most furious current, which ran to the east,

and even came close to the point; and I took the more notice of it

because I saw there might be some danger that when I came into it I

might be carried out to sea by the strength of it, and not be able

to make the island again; and indeed, had I not got first upon this

hill, I believe it would have been so; for there was the same

current on the other side the island, only that it set off at a

further distance, and I saw there was a strong eddy under the

shore; so I had nothing to do but to get out of the first current,

and I should presently be in an eddy.

I lay here, however, two days, because the wind blowing pretty

fresh at ESE., and that being just contrary to the current, made a

great breach of the sea upon the point: so that it was not safe for

me to keep too close to the shore for the breach, nor to go too far

off, because of the stream.

The third day, in the morning, the wind having abated overnight,

the sea was calm, and I ventured: but I am a warning to all rash

and ignorant pilots; for no sooner was I come to the point, when I

was not even my boat's length from the shore, but I found myself in

a great depth of water, and a current like the sluice of a mill; it

carried my boat along with it with such violence that all I could

do could not keep her so much as on the edge of it; but I found it

hurried me farther and farther out from the eddy, which was on my

left hand. There was no wind stirring to help me, and all I could

do with my paddles signified nothing: and now I began to give

myself over for lost; for as the current was on both sides of the

island, I knew in a few leagues distance they must join again, and

then I was irrecoverably gone; nor did I see any possibility of

avoiding it; so that I had no prospect before me but of perishing,

not by the sea, for that was calm enough, but of starving from

hunger. I had, indeed, found a tortoise on the shore, as big

almost as I could lift, and had tossed it into the boat; and I had

a great jar of fresh water, that is to say, one of my earthen pots;

but what was all this to being driven into the vast ocean, where,

to be sure, there was no shore, no mainland or island, for a

thousand leagues at least?

And now I saw how easy it was for the providence of God to make

even the most miserable condition of mankind worse. Now I looked

back upon my desolate, solitary island as the most pleasant place

in the world and all the happiness my heart could wish for was to

be but there again. I stretched out my hands to it, with eager

wishes - "O happy desert!" said I, "I shall never see thee more. O

miserable creature! whither am going?" Then I reproached myself

with my unthankful temper, and that I had repined at my solitary

condition; and now what would I give to be on shore there again!

Thus, we never see the true state of our condition till it is

illustrated to us by its contraries, nor know how to value what we

enjoy, but by the want of it. It is scarcely possible to imagine

the consternation I was now in, being driven from my beloved island

(for so it appeared to me now to be) into the wide ocean, almost

two leagues, and in the utmost despair of ever recovering it again.

However, I worked hard till, indeed, my strength was almost

exhausted, and kept my boat as much to the northward, that is,

towards the side of the current which the eddy lay on, as possibly

I could; when about noon, as the sun passed the meridian, I thought

I felt a little breeze of wind in my face, springing up from SSE.

This cheered my heart a little, and especially when, in about half-

an-hour more, it blew a pretty gentle gale. By this time I had got

at a frightful distance from the island, and had the least cloudy

or hazy weather intervened, I had been undone another way, too; for

I had no compass on board, and should never have known how to have

steered towards the island, if I had but once lost sight of it; but

the weather continuing clear, I applied myself to get up my mast

again, and spread my sail, standing away to the north as much as

possible, to get out of the current.

Just as I had set my mast and sail, and the boat began to stretch

away, I saw even by the clearness of the water some alteration of

the current was near; for where the current was so strong the water

was foul; but perceiving the water clear, I found the current

abate; and presently I found to the east, at about half a mile, a

breach of the sea upon some rocks: these rocks I found caused the

current to part again, and as the main stress of it ran away more

southerly, leaving the rocks to the north-east, so the other

returned by the repulse of the rocks, and made a strong eddy, which

ran back again to the north-west, with a very sharp stream.

They who know what it is to have a reprieve brought to them upon

the ladder, or to be rescued from thieves just going to murder

them, or who have been in such extremities, may guess what my

present surprise of joy was, and how gladly I put my boat into the

stream of this eddy; and the wind also freshening, how gladly I

spread my sail to it, running cheerfully before the wind, and with

a strong tide or eddy underfoot.

This eddy carried me about a league on my way back again, directly

towards the island, but about two leagues more to the northward

than the current which carried me away at first; so that when I

came near the island, I found myself open to the northern shore of

it, that is to say, the other end of the island, opposite to that

which I went out from.

When I had made something more than a league of way by the help of

this current or eddy, I found it was spent, and served me no

further. However, I found that being between two great currents -

viz. that on the south side, which had hurried me away, and that on

the north, which lay about a league on the other side; I say,

between these two, in the wake of the island, I found the water at

least still, and running no way; and having still a breeze of wind

fair for me, I kept on steering directly for the island, though not

making such fresh way as I did before.

About four o'clock in the evening, being then within a league of

the island, I found the point of the rocks which occasioned this

disaster stretching out, as is described before, to the southward,

and casting off the current more southerly, had, of course, made

another eddy to the north; and this I found very strong, but not

directly setting the way my course lay, which was due west, but

almost full north. However, having a fresh gale, I stretched

across this eddy, slanting north-west; and in about an hour came

within about a mile of the shore, where, it being smooth water, I

soon got to land.

When I was on shore, God I fell on my knees and gave God thanks

for my deliverance, resolving to lay aside all thoughts of my

deliverance by my boat; and refreshing myself with such things as

I had, I brought my boat close to the shore, in a little cove that

I had spied under some trees, and laid me down to sleep, being

quite spent with the labour and fatigue of the voyage.

I was now at a great loss which way to get home with my boat! I

had run so much hazard, and knew too much of the case, to think of

attempting it by the way I went out; and what might be at the other

side (I mean the west side) I knew not, nor had I any mind to run

any more ventures; so I resolved on the next morning to make my way

westward along the shore, and to see if there was no creek where I

might lay up my frigate in safety, so as to have her again if I

wanted her. In about three miles or thereabouts, coasting the

shore, I came to a very good inlet or bay, about a mile over, which

narrowed till it came to a very little rivulet or brook, where I

found a very convenient harbour for my boat, and where she lay as

if she had been in a little dock made on purpose for her. Here I

put in, and having stowed my boat very safe, I went on shore to

look about me, and see where I was.

I soon found I had but a little passed by the place where I had

been before, when I travelled on foot to that shore; so taking

nothing out of my boat but my gun and umbrella, for it was

exceedingly hot, I began my march. The way was comfortable enough

after such a voyage as I had been upon, and I reached my old bower

in the evening, where I found everything standing as I left it; for

I always kept it in good order, being, as I said before, my country

house.

I got over the fence, and laid me down in the shade to rest my

limbs, for I was very weary, and fell asleep; but judge you, if you

can, that read my story, what a surprise I must be in when I was

awaked out of my sleep by a voice calling me by my name several

times, "Robin, Robin, Robin Crusoe: poor Robin Crusoe! Where are

you, Robin Crusoe? Where are you? Where have you been?"

I was so dead asleep at first, being fatigued with rowing, or part

of the day, and with walking the latter part, that I did not wake

thoroughly; but dozing thought I dreamed that somebody spoke to me;

but as the voice continued to repeat, "Robin Crusoe, Robin Crusoe,"

at last I began to wake more perfectly, and was at first dreadfully

frightened, and started up in the utmost consternation; but no

sooner were my eyes open, but I saw my Poll sitting on the top of

the hedge; and immediately knew that it was he that spoke to me;

for just in such bemoaning language I had used to talk to him and

teach him; and he had learned it so perfectly that he would sit

upon my finger, and lay his bill close to my face and cry, "Poor

Robin Crusoe! Where are you? Where have you been? How came you

here?" and such things as I had taught him.

However, even though I knew it was the parrot, and that indeed it

could be nobody else, it was a good while before I could compose

myself. First, I was amazed how the creature got thither; and

then, how he should just keep about the place, and nowhere else;

but as I was well satisfied it could be nobody but honest Poll, I

got over it; and holding out my hand, and calling him by his name,

"Poll," the sociable creature came to me, and sat upon my thumb, as

he used to do, and continued talking to me, "Poor Robin Crusoe! and

how did I come here? and where had I been?" just as if he had been

overjoyed to see me again; and so I carried him home along with me.

I had now had enough of rambling to sea for some time, and had

enough to do for many days to sit still and reflect upon the danger

I had been in. I would have been very glad to have had my boat

again on my side of the island; but I knew not how it was

practicable to get it about. As to the east side of the island,

which I had gone round, I knew well enough there was no venturing

that way; my very heart would shrink, and my very blood run chill,

but to think of it; and as to the other side of the island, I did

not know how it might be there; but supposing the current ran with

the same force against the shore at the east as it passed by it on

the other, I might run the same risk of being driven down the

stream, and carried by the island, as I had been before of being

carried away from it: so with these thoughts, I contented myself to

be without any boat, though it had been the product of so many

months' labour to make it, and of so many more to get it into the

sea.

In this government of my temper I remained near a year; and lived a

very sedate, retired life, as you may well suppose; and my thoughts

being very much composed as to my condition, and fully comforted in

resigning myself to the dispositions of Providence, I thought I

lived really very happily in all things except that of society.

I improved myself in this time in all the mechanic exercises which

my necessities put me upon applying myself to; and I believe I

should, upon occasion, have made a very good carpenter, especially

considering how few tools I had.

Besides this, I arrived at an unexpected perfection in my

earthenware, and contrived well enough to make them with a wheel,

which I found infinitely easier and better; because I made things

round and shaped, which before were filthy things indeed to look

on. But I think I was never more vain of my own performance, or

more joyful for anything I found out, than for my being able to

make a tobacco-pipe; and though it was a very ugly, clumsy thing

when it was done, and only burned red, like other earthenware, yet

as it was hard and firm, and would draw the smoke, I was

exceedingly comforted with it, for I had been always used to smoke;

and there were pipes in the ship, but I forgot them at first, not

thinking there was tobacco in the island; and afterwards, when I

searched the ship again, I could not come at any pipes.

In my wicker-ware also I improved much, and made abundance of

necessary baskets, as well as my invention showed me; though not

very handsome, yet they were such as were very handy and convenient

for laying things up in, or fetching things home. For example, if

I killed a goat abroad, I could hang it up in a tree, flay it,

dress it, and cut it in pieces, and bring it home in a basket; and

the like by a turtle; I could cut it up, take out the eggs and a

piece or two of the flesh, which was enough for me, and bring them

home in a basket, and leave the rest behind me. Also, large deep

baskets were the receivers of my corn, which I always rubbed out as

soon as it was dry and cured, and kept it in great baskets.

I began now to perceive my powder abated considerably; this was a

want which it was impossible for me to supply, and I began

seriously to consider what I must do when I should have no more

powder; that is to say, how I should kill any goats. I had, as is

observed in the third year of my being here, kept a young kid, and

bred her up tame, and I was in hopes of getting a he-goat; but I

could not by any means bring it to pass, till my kid grew an old

goat; and as I could never find in my heart to kill her, she died

at last of mere age.

But being now in the eleventh year of my residence, and, as I have

said, my ammunition growing low, I set myself to study some art to

trap and snare the goats, to see whether I could not catch some of

them alive; and particularly I wanted a she-goat great with young.

For this purpose I made snares to hamper them; and I do believe

they were more than once taken in them; but my tackle was not good,

for I had no wire, and I always found them broken and my bait

devoured. At length I resolved to try a pitfall; so I dug several

large pits in the earth, in places where I had observed the goats

used to feed, and over those pits I placed hurdles of my own making

too, with a great weight upon them; and several times I put ears of

barley and dry rice without setting the trap; and I could easily

perceive that the goats had gone in and eaten up the corn, for I

could see the marks of their feet. At length I set three traps in

one night, and going the next morning I found them, all standing,

and yet the bait eaten and gone; this was very discouraging.

However, I altered my traps; and not to trouble you with

particulars, going one morning to see my traps, I found in one of

them a large old he-goat; and in one of the others three kids, a

male and two females.

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him; he was so fierce

I durst not go into the pit to him; that is to say, to bring him

away alive, which was what I wanted. I could have killed him, but

that was not my business, nor would it answer my end; so I even let

him out, and he ran away as if he had been frightened out of his

wits. But I did not then know what I afterwards learned, that

hunger will tame a lion. If I had let him stay three or four days

without food, and then have carried him some water to drink and

then a little corn, he would have been as tame as one of the kids;

for they are mighty sagacious, tractable creatures, where they are

well used.

However, for the present I let him go, knowing no better at that

time: then I went to the three kids, and taking them one by one, I

tied them with strings together, and with some difficulty brought

them all home.

It was a good while before they would feed; but throwing them some

sweet corn, it tempted them, and they began to be tame. And now I

found that if I expected to supply myself with goats' flesh, when I

had no powder or shot left, breeding some up tame was my only way,

when, perhaps, I might have them about my house like a flock of

sheep. But then it occurred to me that I must keep the tame from

the wild, or else they would always run wild when they grew up; and

the only way for this was to have some enclosed piece of ground,

well fenced either with hedge or pale, to keep them in so

effectually, that those within might not break out, or those

without break in.

This was a great undertaking for one pair of hands yet, as I saw

there was an absolute necessity for doing it, my first work was to

find out a proper piece of ground, where there was likely to be

herbage for them to eat, water for them to drink, and cover to keep

them from the sun.

Those who understand such enclosures will think I had very little

contrivance when I pitched upon a place very proper for all these

(being a plain, open piece of meadow land, or savannah, as our

people call it in the western colonies), which had two or three

little drills of fresh water in it, and at one end was very woody -

I say, they will smile at my forecast, when I shall tell them I

began by enclosing this piece of ground in such a manner that, my

hedge or pale must have been at least two miles about. Nor was the

madness of it so great as to the compass, for if it was ten miles

about, I was like to have time enough to do it in; but I did not

consider that my goats would be as wild in so much compass as if

they had had the whole island, and I should have so much room to

chase them in that I should never catch them.

My hedge was begun and carried on, I believe, about fifty yards

when this thought occurred to me; so I presently stopped short,

and, for the beginning, I resolved to enclose a piece of about one

hundred and fifty yards in length, and one hundred yards in

breadth, which, as it would maintain as many as I should have in

any reasonable time, so, as my stock increased, I could add more

ground to my enclosure.

This was acting with some prudence, and I went to work with

courage. I was about three months hedging in the first piece; and,

till I had done it, I tethered the three kids in the best part of

it, and used them to feed as near me as possible, to make them

familiar; and very often I would go and carry them some ears of

barley, or a handful of rice, and feed them out of my hand; so that

after my enclosure was finished and I let them loose, they would

follow me up and down, bleating after me for a handful of corn.

This answered my end, and in about a year and a half I had a flock

of about twelve goats, kids and all; and in two years more I had

three-and-forty, besides several that I took and killed for my

food. After that, I enclosed five several pieces of ground to feed

them in, with little pens to drive them to take them as I wanted,

and gates out of one piece of ground into another.

But this was not all; for now I not only had goat's flesh to feed

on when I pleased, but milk too - a thing which, indeed, in the

beginning, I did not so much as think of, and which, when it came

into my thoughts, was really an agreeable surprise, for now I set

up my dairy, and had sometimes a gallon or two of milk in a day.

And as Nature, who gives supplies of food to every creature,

dictates even naturally how to make use of it, so I, that had never

milked a cow, much less a goat, or seen butter or cheese made only

when I was a boy, after a great many essays and miscarriages, made

both butter and cheese at last, also salt (though I found it partly

made to my hand by the heat of the sun upon some of the rocks of

the sea), and never wanted it afterwards. How mercifully can our

Creator treat His creatures, even in those conditions in which they

seemed to be overwhelmed in destruction! How can He sweeten the

bitterest providences, and give us cause to praise Him for dungeons

and prisons! What a table was here spread for me in the

wilderness, where I saw nothing at first but to perish for hunger!

CHAPTER XI - FINDS PRINT OF MAN'S FOOT ON THE SAND

IT would have made a Stoic smile to have seen me and my little

family sit down to dinner. There was my majesty the prince and

lord of the whole island; I had the lives of all my subjects at my

absolute command; I could hang, draw, give liberty, and take it

away, and no rebels among all my subjects. Then, to see how like a

king I dined, too, all alone, attended by my servants! Poll, as if

he had been my favourite, was the only person permitted to talk to

me. My dog, who was now grown old and crazy, and had found no

species to multiply his kind upon, sat always at my right hand; and

two cats, one on one side of the table and one on the other,

expecting now and then a bit from my hand, as a mark of especial

favour.

But these were not the two cats which I brought on shore at first,

for they were both of them dead, and had been interred near my

habitation by my own hand; but one of them having multiplied by I

know not what kind of creature, these were two which I had

preserved tame; whereas the rest ran wild in the woods, and became

indeed troublesome to me at last, for they would often come into my

house, and plunder me too, till at last I was obliged to shoot

them, and did kill a great many; at length they left me. With this

attendance and in this plentiful manner I lived; neither could I be

said to want anything but society; and of that, some time after

this, I was likely to have too much.

I was something impatient, as I have observed, to have the use of

my boat, though very loath to run any more hazards; and therefore

sometimes I sat contriving ways to get her about the island, and at

other times I sat myself down contented enough without her. But I

had a strange uneasiness in my mind to go down to the point of the

island where, as I have said in my last ramble, I went up the hill

to see how the shore lay, and how the current set, that I might see

what I had to do: this inclination increased upon me every day, and

at length I resolved to travel thither by land, following the edge

of the shore. I did so; but had any one in England met such a man

as I was, it must either have frightened him, or raised a great

deal of laughter; and as I frequently stood still to look at

myself, I could not but smile at the notion of my travelling

through Yorkshire with such an equipage, and in such a dress. Be

pleased to take a sketch of my figure, as follows.

I had a great high shapeless cap, made of a goat's skin, with a

flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the sun from me as to

shoot the rain off from running into my neck, nothing being so

hurtful in these climates as the rain upon the flesh under the

clothes.

I had a short jacket of goat's skin, the skirts coming down to

about the middle of the thighs, and a pair of open-kneed breeches

of the same; the breeches were made of the skin of an old he-goat,

whose hair hung down such a length on either side that, like

pantaloons, it reached to the middle of my legs; stockings and

shoes I had none, but had made me a pair of somethings, I scarce

knew what to call them, like buskins, to flap over my legs, and

lace on either side like spatterdashes, but of a most barbarous

shape, as indeed were all the rest of my clothes.

I had on a broad belt of goat's skin dried, which I drew together

with two thongs of the same instead of buckles, and in a kind of a

frog on either side of this, instead of a sword and dagger, hung a

little saw and a hatchet, one on one side and one on the other. I

had another belt not so broad, and fastened in the same manner,

which hung over my shoulder, and at the end of it, under my left

arm, hung two pouches, both made of goat's skin too, in one of

which hung my powder, in the other my shot. At my back I carried

my basket, and on my shoulder my gun, and over my head a great

clumsy, ugly, goat's-skin umbrella, but which, after all, was the

most necessary thing I had about me next to my gun. As for my

face, the colour of it was really not so mulatto-like as one might

expect from a man not at all careful of it, and living within nine

or ten degrees of the equinox. My beard I had once suffered to

grow till it was about a quarter of a yard long; but as I had both

scissors and razors sufficient, I had cut it pretty short, except

what grew on my upper lip, which I had trimmed into a large pair of

Mahometan whiskers, such as I had seen worn by some Turks at

Sallee, for the Moors did not wear such, though the Turks did; of

these moustachios, or whiskers, I will not say they were long

enough to hang my hat upon them, but they were of a length and

shape monstrous enough, and such as in England would have passed

for frightful.

But all this is by-the-bye; for as to my figure, I had so few to

observe me that it was of no manner of consequence, so I say no

more of that. In this kind of dress I went my new journey, and was

out five or six days. I travelled first along the sea-shore,

directly to the place where I first brought my boat to an anchor to

get upon the rocks; and having no boat now to take care of, I went

over the land a nearer way to the same height that I was upon

before, when, looking forward to the points of the rocks which lay

out, and which I was obliged to double with my boat, as is said

above, I was surprised to see the sea all smooth and quiet - no

rippling, no motion, no current, any more there than in other

places. I was at a strange loss to understand this, and resolved

to spend some time in the observing it, to see if nothing from the

sets of the tide had occasioned it; but I was presently convinced

how it was - viz. that the tide of ebb setting from the west, and

joining with the current of waters from some great river on the

shore, must be the occasion of this current, and that, according as

the wind blew more forcibly from the west or from the north, this

current came nearer or went farther from the shore; for, waiting

thereabouts till evening, I went up to the rock again, and then the

tide of ebb being made, I plainly saw the current again as before,

only that it ran farther off, being near half a league from the

shore, whereas in my case it set close upon the shore, and hurried

me and my canoe along with it, which at another time it would not

have done.

This observation convinced me that I had nothing to do but to

observe the ebbing and the flowing of the tide, and I might very

easily bring my boat about the island again; but when I began to

think of putting it in practice, I had such terror upon my spirits

at the remembrance of the danger I had been in, that I could not

think of it again with any patience, but, on the contrary, I took

up another resolution, which was more safe, though more laborious -

and this was, that I would build, or rather make, me another

periagua or canoe, and so have one for one side of the island, and

one for the other.

You are to understand that now I had, as I may call it, two

plantations in the island - one my little fortification or tent,

with the wall about it, under the rock, with the cave behind me,

which by this time I had enlarged into several apartments or caves,

one within another. One of these, which was the driest and

largest, and had a door out beyond my wall or fortification - that

is to say, beyond where my wall joined to the rock - was all filled

up with the large earthen pots of which I have given an account,

and with fourteen or fifteen great baskets, which would hold five

or six bushels each, where I laid up my stores of provisions,

especially my corn, some in the ear, cut off short from the straw,

and the other rubbed out with my hand.

As for my wall, made, as before, with long stakes or piles, those

piles grew all like trees, and were by this time grown so big, and

spread so very much, that there was not the least appearance, to

any one's view, of any habitation behind them.

Near this dwelling of mine, but a little farther within the land,

and upon lower ground, lay my two pieces of corn land, which I kept

duly cultivated and sowed, and which duly yielded me their harvest

in its season; and whenever I had occasion for more corn, I had

more land adjoining as fit as that.

Besides this, I had my country seat, and I had now a tolerable

plantation there also; for, first, I had my little bower, as I

called it, which I kept in repair - that is to say, I kept the

hedge which encircled it in constantly fitted up to its usual

height, the ladder standing always in the inside. I kept the

trees, which at first were no more than stakes, but were now grown

very firm and tall, always cut, so that they might spread and grow

thick and wild, and make the more agreeable shade, which they did

effectually to my mind. In the middle of this I had my tent always

standing, being a piece of a sail spread over poles, set up for

that purpose, and which never wanted any repair or renewing; and

under this I had made me a squab or couch with the skins of the

creatures I had killed, and with other soft things, and a blanket

laid on them, such as belonged to our sea-bedding, which I had

saved; and a great watch-coat to cover me. And here, whenever I

had occasion to be absent from my chief seat, I took up my country

habitation.

Adjoining to this I had my enclosures for my cattle, that is to say

my goats, and I had taken an inconceivable deal of pains to fence

and enclose this ground. I was so anxious to see it kept entire,

lest the goats should break through, that I never left off till,

with infinite labour, I had stuck the outside of the hedge so full

of small stakes, and so near to one another, that it was rather a

pale than a hedge, and there was scarce room to put a hand through

between them; which afterwards, when those stakes grew, as they all

did in the next rainy season, made the enclosure strong like a

wall, indeed stronger than any wall.

This will testify for me that I was not idle, and that I spared no

pains to bring to pass whatever appeared necessary for my

comfortable support, for I considered the keeping up a breed of

tame creatures thus at my hand would be a living magazine of flesh,

milk, butter, and cheese for me as long as I lived in the place, if

it were to be forty years; and that keeping them in my reach

depended entirely upon my perfecting my enclosures to such a degree

that I might be sure of keeping them together; which by this

method, indeed, I so effectually secured, that when these little

stakes began to grow, I had planted them so very thick that I was

forced to pull some of them up again.

In this place also I had my grapes growing, which I principally

depended on for my winter store of raisins, and which I never

failed to preserve very carefully, as the best and most agreeable

dainty of my whole diet; and indeed they were not only agreeable,

but medicinal, wholesome, nourishing, and refreshing to the last

degree.

As this was also about half-way between my other habitation and the

place where I had laid up my boat, I generally stayed and lay here

in my way thither, for I used frequently to visit my boat; and I

kept all things about or belonging to her in very good order.

Sometimes I went out in her to divert myself, but no more hazardous

voyages would I go, scarcely ever above a stone's cast or two from

the shore, I was so apprehensive of being hurried out of my

knowledge again by the currents or winds, or any other accident.

But now I come to a new scene of my life. It happened one day,

about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with

the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain

to be seen on the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I

had seen an apparition. I listened, I looked round me, but I could

hear nothing, nor see anything; I went up to a rising ground to

look farther; I went up the shore and down the shore, but it was

all one; I could see no other impression but that one. I went to

it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might

not be my fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was

exactly the print of a foot - toes, heel, and every part of a foot.

How it came thither I knew not, nor could I in the least imagine;

but after innumerable fluttering thoughts, like a man perfectly

confused and out of myself, I came home to my fortification, not

feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last

degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking

every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a

man. Nor is it possible to describe how many various shapes my

affrighted imagination represented things to me in, how many wild

ideas were found every moment in my fancy, and what strange,

unaccountable whimsies came into my thoughts by the way.

When I came to my castle (for so I think I called it ever after

this), I fled into it like one pursued. Whether I went over by the

ladder, as first contrived, or went in at the hole in the rock,

which I had called a door, I cannot remember; no, nor could I

remember the next morning, for never frightened hare fled to cover,

or fox to earth, with more terror of mind than I to this retreat.

I slept none that night; the farther I was from the occasion of my

fright, the greater my apprehensions were, which is something

contrary to the nature of such things, and especially to the usual

practice of all creatures in fear; but I was so embarrassed with my

own frightful ideas of the thing, that I formed nothing but dismal

imaginations to myself, even though I was now a great way off.

Sometimes I fancied it must be the devil, and reason joined in with

me in this supposition, for how should any other thing in human

shape come into the place? Where was the vessel that brought them?

What marks were there of any other footstep? And how was it

possible a man should come there? But then, to think that Satan

should take human shape upon him in such a place, where there could

be no manner of occasion for it, but to leave the print of his foot

behind him, and that even for no purpose too, for he could not be

sure I should see it - this was an amusement the other way. I

considered that the devil might have found out abundance of other

ways to have terrified me than this of the single print of a foot;

that as I lived quite on the other side of the island, he would

never have been so simple as to leave a mark in a place where it

was ten thousand to one whether I should ever see it or not, and in

the sand too, which the first surge of the sea, upon a high wind,

would have defaced entirely. All this seemed inconsistent with the

thing itself and with all the notions we usually entertain of the

subtlety of the devil.

Abundance of such things as these assisted to argue me out of all

apprehensions of its being the devil; and I presently concluded

then that it must be some more dangerous creature - viz. that it

must be some of the savages of the mainland opposite who had

wandered out to sea in their canoes, and either driven by the

currents or by contrary winds, had made the island, and had been on

shore, but were gone away again to sea; being as loath, perhaps, to

have stayed in this desolate island as I would have been to have

had them.

While these reflections were rolling in my mind, I was very

thankful in my thoughts that I was so happy as not to be

thereabouts at that time, or that they did not see my boat, by

which they would have concluded that some inhabitants had been in

the place, and perhaps have searched farther for me. Then terrible

thoughts racked my imagination about their having found out my

boat, and that there were people here; and that, if so, I should

certainly have them come again in greater numbers and devour me;

that if it should happen that they should not find me, yet they

would find my enclosure, destroy all my corn, and carry away all my

flock of tame goats, and I should perish at last for mere want.

Thus my fear banished all my religious hope, all that former

confidence in God, which was founded upon such wonderful experience

as I had had of His goodness; as if He that had fed me by miracle

hitherto could not preserve, by His power, the provision which He

had made for me by His goodness. I reproached myself with my

laziness, that would not sow any more corn one year than would just

serve me till the next season, as if no accident could intervene to

prevent my enjoying the crop that was upon the ground; and this I

thought so just a reproof, that I resolved for the future to have

two or three years' corn beforehand; so that, whatever might come,

I might not perish for want of bread.

How strange a chequer-work of Providence is the life of man! and by

what secret different springs are the affections hurried about, as

different circumstances present! To-day we love what to-morrow we

hate; to-day we seek what to-morrow we shun; to-day we desire what

to-morrow we fear, nay, even tremble at the apprehensions of. This

was exemplified in me, at this time, in the most lively manner

imaginable; for I, whose only affliction was that I seemed banished

from human society, that I was alone, circumscribed by the

boundless ocean, cut off from mankind, and condemned to what I call

silent life; that I was as one whom Heaven thought not worthy to be

numbered among the living, or to appear among the rest of His

creatures; that to have seen one of my own species would have

seemed to me a raising me from death to life, and the greatest

blessing that Heaven itself, next to the supreme blessing of

salvation, could bestow; I say, that I should now tremble at the

very apprehensions of seeing a man, and was ready to sink into the

ground at but the shadow or silent appearance of a man having set

his foot in the island.

Such is the uneven state of human life; and it afforded me a great

many curious speculations afterwards, when I had a little recovered

my first surprise. I considered that this was the station of life

the infinitely wise and good providence of God had determined for

me; that as I could not foresee what the ends of Divine wisdom

might be in all this, so I was not to dispute His sovereignty; who,

as I was His creature, had an undoubted right, by creation, to

govern and dispose of me absolutely as He thought fit; and who, as

I was a creature that had offended Him, had likewise a judicial

right to condemn me to what punishment He thought fit; and that it

was my part to submit to bear His indignation, because I had sinned

against Him. I then reflected, that as God, who was not only

righteous but omnipotent, had thought fit thus to punish and

afflict me, so He was able to deliver me: that if He did not think

fit to do so, it was my unquestioned duty to resign myself

absolutely and entirely to His will; and, on the other hand, it was

my duty also to hope in Him, pray to Him, and quietly to attend to

the dictates and directions of His daily providence,

These thoughts took me up many hours, days, nay, I may say weeks

and months: and one particular effect of my cogitations on this

occasion I cannot omit. One morning early, lying in my bed, and

filled with thoughts about my danger from the appearances of

savages, I found it discomposed me very much; upon which these

words of the Scripture came into my thoughts, "Call upon Me in the

day of trouble, and I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify

Me." Upon this, rising cheerfully out of my bed, my heart was not

only comforted, but I was guided and encouraged to pray earnestly

to God for deliverance: when I had done praying I took up my Bible,

and opening it to read, the first words that presented to me were,

"Wait on the Lord, and be of good cheer, and He shall strengthen

thy heart; wait, I say, on the Lord." It is impossible to express

the comfort this gave me. In answer, I thankfully laid down the

book, and was no more sad, at least on that occasion.

In the middle of these cogitations, apprehensions, and reflections,

it came into my thoughts one day that all this might be a mere

chimera of my own, and that this foot might be the print of my own

foot, when I came on shore from my boat: this cheered me up a

little, too, and I began to persuade myself it was all a delusion;

that it was nothing else but my own foot; and why might I not come

that way from the boat, as well as I was going that way to the

boat? Again, I considered also that I could by no means tell for

certain where I had trod, and where I had not; and that if, at

last, this was only the print of my own foot, I had played the part

of those fools who try to make stories of spectres and apparitions,

and then are frightened at them more than anybody.

Now I began to take courage, and to peep abroad again, for I had

not stirred out of my castle for three days and nights, so that I

began to starve for provisions; for I had little or nothing within

doors but some barley-cakes and water; then I knew that my goats

wanted to be milked too, which usually was my evening diversion:

and the poor creatures were in great pain and inconvenience for

want of it; and, indeed, it almost spoiled some of them, and almost

dried up their milk. Encouraging myself, therefore, with the

belief that this was nothing but the print of one of my own feet,

and that I might be truly said to start at my own shadow, I began

to go abroad again, and went to my country house to milk my flock:

but to see with what fear I went forward, how often I looked behind

me, how I was ready every now and then to lay down my basket and

run for my life, it would have made any one have thought I was

haunted with an evil conscience, or that I had been lately most

terribly frightened; and so, indeed, I had. However, I went down

thus two or three days, and having seen nothing, I began to be a

little bolder, and to think there was really nothing in it but my

own imagination; but I could not persuade myself fully of this till

I should go down to the shore again, and see this print of a foot,

and measure it by my own, and see if there was any similitude or

fitness, that I might be assured it was my own foot: but when I

came to the place, first, it appeared evidently to me, that when I

laid up my boat I could not possibly be on shore anywhere

thereabouts; secondly, when I came to measure the mark with my own

foot, I found my foot not so large by a great deal. Both these

things filled my head with new imaginations, and gave me the

vapours again to the highest degree, so that I shook with cold like

one in an ague; and I went home again, filled with the belief that

some man or men had been on shore there; or, in short, that the

island was inhabited, and I might be surprised before I was aware;

and what course to take for my security I knew not.

Oh, what ridiculous resolutions men take when possessed with fear!

It deprives them of the use of those means which reason offers for

their relief. The first thing I proposed to myself was, to throw

down my enclosures, and turn all my tame cattle wild into the

woods, lest the enemy should find them, and then frequent the

island in prospect of the same or the like booty: then the simple

thing of digging up my two corn-fields, lest they should find such

a grain there, and still be prompted to frequent the island: then

to demolish my bower and tent, that they might not see any vestiges

of habitation, and be prompted to look farther, in order to find

out the persons inhabiting.

These were the subject of the first night's cogitations after I was

come home again, while the apprehensions which had so overrun my

mind were fresh upon me, and my head was full of vapours. Thus,

fear of danger is ten thousand times more terrifying than danger

itself, when apparent to the eyes; and we find the burden of

anxiety greater, by much, than the evil which we are anxious about:

and what was worse than all this, I had not that relief in this

trouble that from the resignation I used to practise I hoped to

have. I looked, I thought, like Saul, who complained not only that

the Philistines were upon him, but that God had forsaken him; for I

did not now take due ways to compose my mind, by crying to God in

my distress, and resting upon His providence, as I had done before,

for my defence and deliverance; which, if I had done, I had at

least been more cheerfully supported under this new surprise, and

perhaps carried through it with more resolution.

This confusion of my thoughts kept me awake all night; but in the

morning I fell asleep; and having, by the amusement of my mind,

been as it were tired, and my spirits exhausted, I slept very

soundly, and waked much better composed than I had ever been

before. And now I began to think sedately; and, upon debate with

myself, I concluded that this island (which was so exceedingly

pleasant, fruitful, and no farther from the mainland than as I had

seen) was not so entirely abandoned as I might imagine; that

although there were no stated inhabitants who lived on the spot,

yet that there might sometimes come boats off from the shore, who,

either with design, or perhaps never but when they were driven by

cross winds, might come to this place; that I had lived there

fifteen years now and had not met with the least shadow or figure

of any people yet; and that, if at any time they should be driven

here, it was probable they went away again as soon as ever they

could, seeing they had never thought fit to fix here upon any

occasion; that the most I could suggest any danger from was from

any casual accidental landing of straggling people from the main,

who, as it was likely, if they were driven hither, were here

against their wills, so they made no stay here, but went off again

with all possible speed; seldom staying one night on shore, lest

they should not have the help of the tides and daylight back again;

and that, therefore, I had nothing to do but to consider of some

safe retreat, in case I should see any savages land upon the spot.

Now, I began sorely to repent that I had dug my cave so large as to

bring a door through again, which door, as I said, came out beyond

where my fortification joined to the rock: upon maturely

considering this, therefore, I resolved to draw me a second

fortification, in the manner of a semicircle, at a distance from my

wall, just where I had planted a double row of trees about twelve

years before, of which I made mention: these trees having been

planted so thick before, they wanted but few piles to be driven

between them, that they might be thicker and stronger, and my wall

would be soon finished. So that I had now a double wall; and my

outer wall was thickened with pieces of timber, old cables, and

everything I could think of, to make it strong; having in it seven

little holes, about as big as I might put my arm out at. In the

inside of this I thickened my wall to about ten feet thick with

continually bringing earth out of my cave, and laying it at the

foot of the wall, and walking upon it; and through the seven holes

I contrived to plant the muskets, of which I took notice that I had

got seven on shore out of the ship; these I planted like my cannon,

and fitted them into frames, that held them like a carriage, so

that I could fire all the seven guns in two minutes' time; this

wall I was many a weary month in finishing, and yet never thought

myself safe till it was done.

When this was done I stuck all the ground without my wall, for a

great length every way, as full with stakes or sticks of the osier-

like wood, which I found so apt to grow, as they could well stand;

insomuch that I believe I might set in near twenty thousand of

them, leaving a pretty large space between them and my wall, that I

might have room to see an enemy, and they might have no shelter

from the young trees, if they attempted to approach my outer wall.

Thus in two years' time I had a thick grove; and in five or six

years' time I had a wood before my dwelling, growing so monstrously

thick and strong that it was indeed perfectly impassable: and no

men, of what kind soever, could ever imagine that there was

anything beyond it, much less a habitation. As for the way which I

proposed to myself to go in and out (for I left no avenue), it was

by setting two ladders, one to a part of the rock which was low,

and then broke in, and left room to place another ladder upon that;

so when the two ladders were taken down no man living could come

down to me without doing himself mischief; and if they had come

down, they were still on the outside of my outer wall.

Thus I took all the measures human prudence could suggest for my

own preservation; and it will be seen at length that they were not

altogether without just reason; though I foresaw nothing at that

time more than my mere fear suggested to me.

CHAPTER XII - A CAVE RETREAT

WHILE this was doing, I was not altogether careless of my other

affairs; for I had a great concern upon me for my little herd of

goats: they were not only a ready supply to me on every occasion,

and began to be sufficient for me, without the expense of powder

and shot, but also without the fatigue of hunting after the wild

ones; and I was loath to lose the advantage of them, and to have

them all to nurse up over again.

For this purpose, after long consideration, I could think of but

two ways to preserve them: one was, to find another convenient

place to dig a cave underground, and to drive them into it every

night; and the other was to enclose two or three little bits of

land, remote from one another, and as much concealed as I could,

where I might keep about half-a-dozen young goats in each place; so

that if any disaster happened to the flock in general, I might be

able to raise them again with little trouble and time: and this

though it would require a good deal of time and labour, I thought

was the most rational design.

Accordingly, I spent some time to find out the most retired parts

of the island; and I pitched upon one, which was as private,

indeed, as my heart could wish: it was a little damp piece of

ground in the middle of the hollow and thick woods, where, as is

observed, I almost lost myself once before, endeavouring to come

back that way from the eastern part of the island. Here I found a

clear piece of land, near three acres, so surrounded with woods

that it was almost an enclosure by nature; at least, it did not

want near so much labour to make it so as the other piece of ground

I had worked so hard at.

I immediately went to work with this piece of ground; and in less

than a month's time I had so fenced it round that my flock, or

herd, call it which you please, which were not so wild now as at

first they might be supposed to be, were well enough secured in it:

so, without any further delay, I removed ten young she-goats and

two he-goats to this piece, and when they were there I continued to

perfect the fence till I had made it as secure as the other; which,

however, I did at more leisure, and it took me up more time by a

great deal. All this labour I was at the expense of, purely from

my apprehensions on account of the print of a man's foot; for as

yet I had never seen any human creature come near the island; and I

had now lived two years under this uneasiness, which, indeed, made

my life much less comfortable than it was before, as may be well

imagined by any who know what it is to live in the constant snare

of the fear of man. And this I must observe, with grief, too, that

the discomposure of my mind had great impression also upon the

religious part of my thoughts; for the dread and terror of falling

into the hands of savages and cannibals lay so upon my spirits,

that I seldom found myself in a due temper for application to my

Maker; at least, not with the sedate calmness and resignation of

soul which I was wont to do: I rather prayed to God as under great

affliction and pressure of mind, surrounded with danger, and in

expectation every night of being murdered and devoured before

morning; and I must testify, from my experience, that a temper of

peace, thankfulness, love, and affection, is much the more proper

frame for prayer than that of terror and discomposure: and that

under the dread of mischief impending, a man is no more fit for a

comforting performance of the duty of praying to God than he is for

a repentance on a sick-bed; for these discomposures affect the

mind, as the others do the body; and the discomposure of the mind

must necessarily be as great a disability as that of the body, and

much greater; praying to God being properly an act of the mind, not

of the body.

But to go on. After I had thus secured one part of my little

living stock, I went about the whole island, searching for another

private place to make such another deposit; when, wandering more to

the west point of the island than I had ever done yet, and looking

out to sea, I thought I saw a boat upon the sea, at a great

distance. I had found a perspective glass or two in one of the

seamen's chests, which I saved out of our ship, but I had it not

about me; and this was so remote that I could not tell what to make

of it, though I looked at it till my eyes were not able to hold to

look any longer; whether it was a boat or not I do not know, but as

I descended from the hill I could see no more of it, so I gave it

over; only I resolved to go no more out without a perspective glass

in my pocket. When I was come down the hill to the end of the

island, where, indeed, I had never been before, I was presently

convinced that the seeing the print of a man's foot was not such a

strange thing in the island as I imagined: and but that it was a

special providence that I was cast upon the side of the island

where the savages never came, I should easily have known that

nothing was more frequent than for the canoes from the main, when

they happened to be a little too far out at sea, to shoot over to

that side of the island for harbour: likewise, as they often met

and fought in their canoes, the victors, having taken any

prisoners, would bring them over to this shore, where, according to

their dreadful customs, being all cannibals, they would kill and

eat them; of which hereafter.

When I was come down the hill to the shore, as I said above, being

the SW. point of the island, I was perfectly confounded and amazed;

nor is it possible for me to express the horror of my mind at

seeing the shore spread with skulls, hands, feet, and other bones

of human bodies; and particularly I observed a place where there

had been a fire made, and a circle dug in the earth, like a

cockpit, where I supposed the savage wretches had sat down to their

human feastings upon the bodies of their fellow-creatures.

I was so astonished with the sight of these things, that I

entertained no notions of any danger to myself from it for a long

while: all my apprehensions were buried in the thoughts of such a

pitch of inhuman, hellish brutality, and the horror of the

degeneracy of human nature, which, though I had heard of it often,

yet I never had so near a view of before; in short, I turned away

my face from the horrid spectacle; my stomach grew sick, and I was

just at the point of fainting, when nature discharged the disorder

from my stomach; and having vomited with uncommon violence, I was a

little relieved, but could not bear to stay in the place a moment;

so I got up the hill again with all the speed I could, and walked

on towards my own habitation.

When I came a little out of that part of the island I stood still

awhile, as amazed, and then, recovering myself, I looked up with

the utmost affection of my soul, and, with a flood of tears in my

eyes, gave God thanks, that had cast my first lot in a part of the

world where I was distinguished from such dreadful creatures as

these; and that, though I had esteemed my present condition very

miserable, had yet given me so many comforts in it that I had still

more to give thanks for than to complain of: and this, above all,

that I had, even in this miserable condition, been comforted with

the knowledge of Himself, and the hope of His blessing: which was a

felicity more than sufficiently equivalent to all the misery which

I had suffered, or could suffer.

In this frame of thankfulness I went home to my castle, and began

to be much easier now, as to the safety of my circumstances, than

ever I was before: for I observed that these wretches never came to

this island in search of what they could get; perhaps not seeking,

not wanting, or not expecting anything here; and having often, no

doubt, been up the covered, woody part of it without finding

anything to their purpose. I knew I had been here now almost

eighteen years, and never saw the least footsteps of human creature

there before; and I might be eighteen years more as entirely

concealed as I was now, if I did not discover myself to them, which

I had no manner of occasion to do; it being my only business to

keep myself entirely concealed where I was, unless I found a better

sort of creatures than cannibals to make myself known to. Yet I

entertained such an abhorrence of the savage wretches that I have

been speaking of, and of the wretched, inhuman custom of their

devouring and eating one another up, that I continued pensive and

sad, and kept close within my own circle for almost two years after

this: when I say my own circle, I mean by it my three plantations -

viz. my castle, my country seat (which I called my bower), and my

enclosure in the woods: nor did I look after this for any other use

than an enclosure for my goats; for the aversion which nature gave

me to these hellish wretches was such, that I was as fearful of

seeing them as of seeing the devil himself. I did not so much as

go to look after my boat all this time, but began rather to think

of making another; for I could not think of ever making any more

attempts to bring the other boat round the island to me, lest I

should meet with some of these creatures at sea; in which case, if

I had happened to have fallen into their hands, I knew what would

have been my lot.

Time, however, and the satisfaction I had that I was in no danger

of being discovered by these people, began to wear off my

uneasiness about them; and I began to live just in the same

composed manner as before, only with this difference, that I used

more caution, and kept my eyes more about me than I did before,

lest I should happen to be seen by any of them; and particularly, I

was more cautious of firing my gun, lest any of them, being on the

island, should happen to hear it. It was, therefore, a very good

providence to me that I had furnished myself with a tame breed of

goats, and that I had no need to hunt any more about the woods, or

shoot at them; and if I did catch any of them after this, it was by

traps and snares, as I had done before; so that for two years after

this I believe I never fired my gun once off, though I never went

out without it; and what was more, as I had saved three pistols out

of the ship, I always carried them out with me, or at least two of

them, sticking them in my goat-skin belt. I also furbished up one

of the great cutlasses that I had out of the ship, and made me a

belt to hang it on also; so that I was now a most formidable fellow

to look at when I went abroad, if you add to the former description

of myself the particular of two pistols, and a broadsword hanging

at my side in a belt, but without a scabbard.

Things going on thus, as I have said, for some time, I seemed,

excepting these cautions, to be reduced to my former calm, sedate

way of living. All these things tended to show me more and more

how far my condition was from being miserable, compared to some

others; nay, to many other particulars of life which it might have

pleased God to have made my lot. It put me upon reflecting how

little repining there would be among mankind at any condition of

life if people would rather compare their condition with those that

were worse, in order to be thankful, than be always comparing them

with those which are better, to assist their murmurings and

complainings.

As in my present condition there were not really many things which

I wanted, so indeed I thought that the frights I had been in about

these savage wretches, and the concern I had been in for my own

preservation, had taken off the edge of my invention, for my own

conveniences; and I had dropped a good design, which I had once

bent my thoughts upon, and that was to try if I could not make some

of my barley into malt, and then try to brew myself some beer.

This was really a whimsical thought, and I reproved myself often

for the simplicity of it: for I presently saw there would be the

want of several things necessary to the making my beer that it

would be impossible for me to supply; as, first, casks to preserve

it in, which was a thing that, as I have observed already, I could

never compass: no, though I spent not only many days, but weeks,

nay months, in attempting it, but to no purpose. In the next

place, I had no hops to make it keep, no yeast to made it work, no

copper or kettle to make it boil; and yet with all these things

wanting, I verily believe, had not the frights and terrors I was in

about the savages intervened, I had undertaken it, and perhaps

brought it to pass too; for I seldom gave anything over without

accomplishing it, when once I had it in my head to began it. But

my invention now ran quite another way; for night and day I could

think of nothing but how I might destroy some of the monsters in

their cruel, bloody entertainment, and if possible save the victim

they should bring hither to destroy. It would take up a larger

volume than this whole work is intended to be to set down all the

contrivances I hatched, or rather brooded upon, in my thoughts, for

the destroying these creatures, or at least frightening them so as

to prevent their coming hither any more: but all this was abortive;

nothing could be possible to take effect, unless I was to be there

to do it myself: and what could one man do among them, when perhaps

there might be twenty or thirty of them together with their darts,

or their bows and arrows, with which they could shoot as true to a

mark as I could with my gun?

Sometimes I thought if digging a hole under the place where they

made their fire, and putting in five or six pounds of gunpowder,

which, when they kindled their fire, would consequently take fire,

and blow up all that was near it: but as, in the first place, I

should be unwilling to waste so much powder upon them, my store

being now within the quantity of one barrel, so neither could I be

sure of its going off at any certain time, when it might surprise

them; and, at best, that it would do little more than just blow the

fire about their ears and fright them, but not sufficient to make

them forsake the place: so I laid it aside; and then proposed that

I would place myself in ambush in some convenient place, with my

three guns all double-loaded, and in the middle of their bloody

ceremony let fly at them, when I should be sure to kill or wound

perhaps two or three at every shot; and then falling in upon them

with my three pistols and my sword, I made no doubt but that, if

there were twenty, I should kill them all. This fancy pleased my

thoughts for some weeks, and I was so full of it that I often

dreamed of it, and, sometimes, that I was just going to let fly at

them in my sleep. I went so far with it in my imagination that I

employed myself several days to find out proper places to put

myself in ambuscade, as I said, to watch for them, and I went

frequently to the place itself, which was now grown more familiar

to me; but while my mind was thus filled with thoughts of revenge

and a bloody putting twenty or thirty of them to the sword, as I

may call it, the horror I had at the place, and at the signals of

the barbarous wretches devouring one another, abetted my malice.

Well, at length I found a place in the side of the hill where I was

satisfied I might securely wait till I saw any of their boats

coming; and might then, even before they would be ready to come on

shore, convey myself unseen into some thickets of trees, in one of

which there was a hollow large enough to conceal me entirely; and

there I might sit and observe all their bloody doings, and take my

full aim at their heads, when they were so close together as that

it would be next to impossible that I should miss my shot, or that

I could fail wounding three or four of them at the first shot. In

this place, then, I resolved to fulfil my design; and accordingly I

prepared two muskets and my ordinary fowling-piece. The two

muskets I loaded with a brace of slugs each, and four or five

smaller bullets, about the size of pistol bullets; and the fowling-

piece I loaded with near a handful of swan-shot of the largest

size; I also loaded my pistols with about four bullets each; and,

in this posture, well provided with ammunition for a second and

third charge, I prepared myself for my expedition.

After I had thus laid the scheme of my design, and in my

imagination put it in practice, I continually made my tour every

morning to the top of the hill, which was from my castle, as I

called it, about three miles or more, to see if I could observe any

boats upon the sea, coming near the island, or standing over

towards it; but I began to tire of this hard duty, after I had for

two or three months constantly kept my watch, but came always back

without any discovery; there having not, in all that time, been the

least appearance, not only on or near the shore, but on the whole

ocean, so far as my eye or glass could reach every way.

As long as I kept my daily tour to the hill, to look out, so long

also I kept up the vigour of my design, and my spirits seemed to be

all the while in a suitable frame for so outrageous an execution as

the killing twenty or thirty naked savages, for an offence which I

had not at all entered into any discussion of in my thoughts, any

farther than my passions were at first fired by the horror I

conceived at the unnatural custom of the people of that country,

who, it seems, had been suffered by Providence, in His wise

disposition of the world, to have no other guide than that of their

own abominable and vitiated passions; and consequently were left,

and perhaps had been so for some ages, to act such horrid things,

and receive such dreadful customs, as nothing but nature, entirely

abandoned by Heaven, and actuated by some hellish degeneracy, could

have run them into. But now, when, as I have said, I began to be

weary of the fruitless excursion which I had made so long and so

far every morning in vain, so my opinion of the action itself began

to alter; and I began, with cooler and calmer thoughts, to consider

what I was going to engage in; what authority or call I had to

pretend to be judge and executioner upon these men as criminals,

whom Heaven had thought fit for so many ages to suffer unpunished

to go on, and to be as it were the executioners of His judgments

one upon another; how far these people were offenders against me,

and what right I had to engage in the quarrel of that blood which

they shed promiscuously upon one another. I debated this very

often with myself thus: "How do I know what God Himself judges in

this particular case? It is certain these people do not commit

this as a crime; it is not against their own consciences reproving,

or their light reproaching them; they do not know it to be an

offence, and then commit it in defiance of divine justice, as we do

in almost all the sins we commit. They think it no more a crime to

kill a captive taken in war than we do to kill an ox; or to eat

human flesh than we do to eat mutton."

When I considered this a little, it followed necessarily that I was

certainly in the wrong; that these people were not murderers, in

the sense that I had before condemned them in my thoughts, any more

than those Christians were murderers who often put to death the

prisoners taken in battle; or more frequently, upon many occasions,

put whole troops of men to the sword, without giving quarter,

though they threw down their arms and submitted. In the next

place, it occurred to me that although the usage they gave one

another was thus brutish and inhuman, yet it was really nothing to

me: these people had done me no injury: that if they attempted, or

I saw it necessary, for my immediate preservation, to fall upon

them, something might be said for it: but that I was yet out of

their power, and they really had no knowledge of me, and

consequently no design upon me; and therefore it could not be just

for me to fall upon them; that this would justify the conduct of

the Spaniards in all their barbarities practised in America, where

they destroyed millions of these people; who, however they were

idolators and barbarians, and had several bloody and barbarous

rites in their customs, such as sacrificing human bodies to their

idols, were yet, as to the Spaniards, very innocent people; and

that the rooting them out of the country is spoken of with the

utmost abhorrence and detestation by even the Spaniards themselves

at this time, and by all other Christian nations of Europe, as a

mere butchery, a bloody and unnatural piece of cruelty,

unjustifiable either to God or man; and for which the very name of

a Spaniard is reckoned to be frightful and terrible, to all people

of humanity or of Christian compassion; as if the kingdom of Spain

were particularly eminent for the produce of a race of men who were

without principles of tenderness, or the common bowels of pity to

the miserable, which is reckoned to be a mark of generous temper in

the mind.

These considerations really put me to a pause, and to a kind of a

full stop; and I began by little and little to be off my design,

and to conclude I had taken wrong measures in my resolution to

attack the savages; and that it was not my business to meddle with

them, unless they first attacked me; and this it was my business,

if possible, to prevent: but that, if I were discovered and

attacked by them, I knew my duty. On the other hand, I argued with

myself that this really was the way not to deliver myself, but

entirely to ruin and destroy myself; for unless I was sure to kill

every one that not only should be on shore at that time, but that

should ever come on shore afterwards, if but one of them escaped to

tell their country-people what had happened, they would come over

again by thousands to revenge the death of their fellows, and I

should only bring upon myself a certain destruction, which, at

present, I had no manner of occasion for. Upon the whole, I

concluded that I ought, neither in principle nor in policy, one way

or other, to concern myself in this affair: that my business was,

by all possible means to conceal myself from them, and not to leave

the least sign for them to guess by that there were any living

creatures upon the island - I mean of human shape. Religion joined

in with this prudential resolution; and I was convinced now, many

ways, that I was perfectly out of my duty when I was laying all my

bloody schemes for the destruction of innocent creatures - I mean

innocent as to me. As to the crimes they were guilty of towards

one another, I had nothing to do with them; they were national, and

I ought to leave them to the justice of God, who is the Governor of

nations, and knows how, by national punishments, to make a just

retribution for national offences, and to bring public judgments

upon those who offend in a public manner, by such ways as best

please Him. This appeared so clear to me now, that nothing was a

greater satisfaction to me than that I had not been suffered to do

a thing which I now saw so much reason to believe would have been

no less a sin than that of wilful murder if I had committed it; and

I gave most humble thanks on my knees to God, that He had thus

delivered me from blood-guiltiness; beseeching Him to grant me the

protection of His providence, that I might not fall into the hands

of the barbarians, or that I might not lay my hands upon them,

unless I had a more clear call from Heaven to do it, in defence of

my own life.

In this disposition I continued for near a year after this; and so

far was I from desiring an occasion for falling upon these

wretches, that in all that time I never once went up the hill to

see whether there were any of them in sight, or to know whether any

of them had been on shore there or not, that I might not be tempted

to renew any of my contrivances against them, or be provoked by any

advantage that might present itself to fall upon them; only this I

did: I went and removed my boat, which I had on the other side of

the island, and carried it down to the east end of the whole

island, where I ran it into a little cove, which I found under some

high rocks, and where I knew, by reason of the currents, the

savages durst not, at least would not, come with their boats upon

any account whatever. With my boat I carried away everything that

I had left there belonging to her, though not necessary for the

bare going thither - viz. a mast and sail which I had made for her,

and a thing like an anchor, but which, indeed, could not be called

either anchor or grapnel; however, it was the best I could make of

its kind: all these I removed, that there might not be the least

shadow for discovery, or appearance of any boat, or of any human

habitation upon the island. Besides this, I kept myself, as I

said, more retired than ever, and seldom went from my cell except

upon my constant employment, to milk my she-goats, and manage my

little flock in the wood, which, as it was quite on the other part

of the island, was out of danger; for certain, it is that these

savage people, who sometimes haunted this island, never came with

any thoughts of finding anything here, and consequently never

wandered off from the coast, and I doubt not but they might have

been several times on shore after my apprehensions of them had made

me cautious, as well as before. Indeed, I looked back with some

horror upon the thoughts of what my condition would have been if I

had chopped upon them and been discovered before that; when, naked

and unarmed, except with one gun, and that loaded often only with

small shot, I walked everywhere, peeping and peering about the

island, to see what I could get; what a surprise should I have been

in if, when I discovered the print of a man's foot, I had, instead

of that, seen fifteen or twenty savages, and found them pursuing

me, and by the swiftness of their running no possibility of my

escaping them! The thoughts of this sometimes sank my very soul

within me, and distressed my mind so much that I could not soon

recover it, to think what I should have done, and how I should not

only have been unable to resist them, but even should not have had

presence of mind enough to do what I might have done; much less

what now, after so much consideration and preparation, I might be

able to do. Indeed, after serious thinking of these things, I

would be melancholy, and sometimes it would last a great while; but

I resolved it all at last into thankfulness to that Providence

which had delivered me from so many unseen dangers, and had kept me

from those mischiefs which I could have no way been the agent in

delivering myself from, because I had not the least notion of any

such thing depending, or the least supposition of its being

possible. This renewed a contemplation which often had come into

my thoughts in former times, when first I began to see the merciful

dispositions of Heaven, in the dangers we run through in this life;

how wonderfully we are delivered when we know nothing of it; how,

when we are in a quandary as we call it, a doubt or hesitation

whether to go this way or that way, a secret hint shall direct us

this way, when we intended to go that way: nay, when sense, our own

inclination, and perhaps business has called us to go the other

way, yet a strange impression upon the mind, from we know not what

springs, and by we know not what power, shall overrule us to go

this way; and it shall afterwards appear that had we gone that way,

which we should have gone, and even to our imagination ought to

have gone, we should have been ruined and lost. Upon these and

many like reflections I afterwards made it a certain rule with me,

that whenever I found those secret hints or pressings of mind to

doing or not doing anything that presented, or going this way or

that way, I never failed to obey the secret dictate; though I knew

no other reason for it than such a pressure or such a hint hung

upon my mind. I could give many examples of the success of this

conduct in the course of my life, but more especially in the latter

part of my inhabiting this unhappy island; besides many occasions

which it is very likely I might have taken notice of, if I had seen

with the same eyes then that I see with now. But it is never too

late to be wise; and I cannot but advise all considering men, whose

lives are attended with such extraordinary incidents as mine, or

even though not so extraordinary, not to slight such secret

intimations of Providence, let them come from what invisible

intelligence they will. That I shall not discuss, and perhaps

cannot account for; but certainly they are a proof of the converse

of spirits, and a secret communication between those embodied and

those unembodied, and such a proof as can never be withstood; of

which I shall have occasion to give some remarkable instances in

the remainder of my solitary residence in this dismal place.

I believe the reader of this will not think it strange if I confess

that these anxieties, these constant dangers I lived in, and the

concern that was now upon me, put an end to all invention, and to

all the contrivances that I had laid for my future accommodations

and conveniences. I had the care of my safety more now upon my

hands than that of my food. I cared not to drive a nail, or chop a

stick of wood now, for fear the noise I might make should be heard:

much less would I fire a gun for the same reason: and above all I

was intolerably uneasy at making any fire, lest the smoke, which is

visible at a great distance in the day, should betray me. For this

reason, I removed that part of my business which required fire,

such as burning of pots and pipes, &c., into my new apartment in

the woods; where, after I had been some time, I found, to my

unspeakable consolation, a mere natural cave in the earth, which

went in a vast way, and where, I daresay, no savage, had he been at

the mouth of it, would be so hardy as to venture in; nor, indeed,

would any man else, but one who, like me, wanted nothing so much as

a safe retreat.

The mouth of this hollow was at the bottom of a great rock, where,

by mere accident (I would say, if I did not see abundant reason to

ascribe all such things now to Providence), I was cutting down some

thick branches of trees to make charcoal; and before I go on I must

observe the reason of my making this charcoal, which was this - I

was afraid of making a smoke about my habitation, as I said before;

and yet I could not live there without baking my bread, cooking my

meat, &c.; so I contrived to burn some wood here, as I had seen

done in England, under turf, till it became chark or dry coal: and

then putting the fire out, I preserved the coal to carry home, and

perform the other services for which fire was wanting, without

danger of smoke. But this is by-the-bye. While I was cutting down

some wood here, I perceived that, behind a very thick branch of low

brushwood or underwood, there was a kind of hollow place: I was

curious to look in it; and getting with difficulty into the mouth

of it, I found it was pretty large, that is to say, sufficient for

me to stand upright in it, and perhaps another with me: but I must

confess to you that I made more haste out than I did in, when

looking farther into the place, and which was perfectly dark, I saw

two broad shining eyes of some creature, whether devil or man I

knew not, which twinkled like two stars; the dim light from the

cave's mouth shining directly in, and making the reflection.

However, after some pause I recovered myself, and began to call

myself a thousand fools, and to think that he that was afraid to

see the devil was not fit to live twenty years in an island all

alone; and that I might well think there was nothing in this cave

that was more frightful than myself. Upon this, plucking up my

courage, I took up a firebrand, and in I rushed again, with the

stick flaming in my hand: I had not gone three steps in before I

was almost as frightened as before; for I heard a very loud sigh,

like that of a man in some pain, and it was followed by a broken

noise, as of words half expressed, and then a deep sigh again. I

stepped back, and was indeed struck with such a surprise that it

put me into a cold sweat, and if I had had a hat on my head, I will

not answer for it that my hair might not have lifted it off. But

still plucking up my spirits as well as I could, and encouraging

myself a little with considering that the power and presence of God

was everywhere, and was able to protect me, I stepped forward

again, and by the light of the firebrand, holding it up a little

over my head, I saw lying on the ground a monstrous, frightful old

he-goat, just making his will, as we say, and gasping for life,

and, dying, indeed, of mere old age. I stirred him a little to see

if I could get him out, and he essayed to get up, but was not able

to raise himself; and I thought with myself he might even lie there

- for if he had frightened me, so he would certainly fright any of

the savages, if any of them should be so hardy as to come in there

while he had any life in him.

I was now recovered from my surprise, and began to look round me,

when I found the cave was but very small - that is to say, it might

be about twelve feet over, but in no manner of shape, neither round

nor square, no hands having ever been employed in making it but

those of mere Nature. I observed also that there was a place at

the farther side of it that went in further, but was so low that it

required me to creep upon my hands and knees to go into it, and

whither it went I knew not; so, having no candle, I gave it over

for that time, but resolved to go again the next day provided with

candles and a tinder-box, which I had made of the lock of one of

the muskets, with some wildfire in the pan.

Accordingly, the next day I came provided with six large candles of

my own making (for I made very good candles now of goat's tallow,

but was hard set for candle-wick, using sometimes rags or rope-

yarn, and sometimes the dried rind of a weed like nettles); and

going into this low place I was obliged to creep upon all-fours as

I have said, almost ten yards - which, by the way, I thought was a

venture bold enough, considering that I knew not how far it might

go, nor what was beyond it. When I had got through the strait, I

found the roof rose higher up, I believe near twenty feet; but

never was such a glorious sight seen in the island, I daresay, as

it was to look round the sides and roof of this vault or cave - the

wall reflected a hundred thousand lights to me from my two candles.

What it was in the rock - whether diamonds or any other precious

stones, or gold which I rather supposed it to be - I knew not. The

place I was in was a most delightful cavity, or grotto, though

perfectly dark; the floor was dry and level, and had a sort of a

small loose gravel upon it, so that there was no nauseous or

venomous creature to be seen, neither was there any damp or wet on

the sides or roof. The only difficulty in it was the entrance -

which, however, as it was a place of security, and such a retreat

as I wanted; I thought was a convenience; so that I was really

rejoiced at the discovery, and resolved, without any delay, to

bring some of those things which I was most anxious about to this

place: particularly, I resolved to bring hither my magazine of

powder, and all my spare arms - viz. two fowling-pieces - for I had

three in all - and three muskets - for of them I had eight in all;

so I kept in my castle only five, which stood ready mounted like

pieces of cannon on my outmost fence, and were ready also to take

out upon any expedition. Upon this occasion of removing my

ammunition I happened to open the barrel of powder which I took up

out of the sea, and which had been wet, and I found that the water

had penetrated about three or four inches into the powder on every

side, which caking and growing hard, had preserved the inside like

a kernel in the shell, so that I had near sixty pounds of very good

powder in the centre of the cask. This was a very agreeable

discovery to me at that time; so I carried all away thither, never

keeping above two or three pounds of powder with me in my castle,

for fear of a surprise of any kind; I also carried thither all the

lead I had left for bullets.

I fancied myself now like one of the ancient giants who were said

to live in caves and holes in the rocks, where none could come at

them; for I persuaded myself, while I was here, that if five

hundred savages were to hunt me, they could never find me out - or

if they did, they would not venture to attack me here. The old

goat whom I found expiring died in the mouth of the cave the next

day after I made this discovery; and I found it much easier to dig

a great hole there, and throw him in and cover him with earth, than

to drag him out; so I interred him there, to prevent offence to my

nose.

CHAPTER XIII - WRECK OF A SPANISH SHIP

I WAS now in the twenty-third year of my residence in this island,

and was so naturalised to the place and the manner of living, that,

could I but have enjoyed the certainty that no savages would come

to the place to disturb me, I could have been content to have

capitulated for spending the rest of my time there, even to the

last moment, till I had laid me down and died, like the old goat in

the cave. I had also arrived to some little diversions and

amusements, which made the time pass a great deal more pleasantly

with me than it did before - first, I had taught my Poll, as I

noted before, to speak; and he did it so familiarly, and talked so

articulately and plain, that it was very pleasant to me; and he

lived with me no less than six-and-twenty years. How long he might

have lived afterwards I know not, though I know they have a notion

in the Brazils that they live a hundred years. My dog was a

pleasant and loving companion to me for no less than sixteen years

of my time, and then died of mere old age. As for my cats, they

multiplied, as I have observed, to that degree that I was obliged

to shoot several of them at first, to keep them from devouring me

and all I had; but at length, when the two old ones I brought with

me were gone, and after some time continually driving them from me,

and letting them have no provision with me, they all ran wild into

the woods, except two or three favourites, which I kept tame, and

whose young, when they had any, I always drowned; and these were

part of my family. Besides these I always kept two or three

household kids about me, whom I taught to feed out of my hand; and

I had two more parrots, which talked pretty well, and would all

call "Robin Crusoe," but none like my first; nor, indeed, did I

take the pains with any of them that I had done with him. I had

also several tame sea-fowls, whose name I knew not, that I caught

upon the shore, and cut their wings; and the little stakes which I

had planted before my castle-wall being now grown up to a good

thick grove, these fowls all lived among these low trees, and bred

there, which was very agreeable to me; so that, as I said above, I

began to he very well contented with the life I led, if I could

have been secured from the dread of the savages. But it was

otherwise directed; and it may not be amiss for all people who

shall meet with my story to make this just observation from it: How

frequently, in the course of our lives, the evil which in itself we

seek most to shun, and which, when we are fallen into, is the most

dreadful to us, is oftentimes the very means or door of our

deliverance, by which alone we can be raised again from the

affliction we are fallen into. I could give many examples of this

in the course of my unaccountable life; but in nothing was it more

particularly remarkable than in the circumstances of my last years

of solitary residence in this island.

It was now the month of December, as I said above, in my twenty-

third year; and this, being the southern solstice (for winter I

cannot call it), was the particular time of my harvest, and

required me to be pretty much abroad in the fields, when, going out

early in the morning, even before it was thorough daylight, I was

surprised with seeing a light of some fire upon the shore, at a

distance from me of about two miles, toward that part of the island

where I had observed some savages had been, as before, and not on

the other side; but, to my great affliction, it was on my side of

the island.

I was indeed terribly surprised at the sight, and stopped short

within my grove, not daring to go out, lest I might be surprised;

and yet I had no more peace within, from the apprehensions I had

that if these savages, in rambling over the island, should find my

corn standing or cut, or any of my works or improvements, they

would immediately conclude that there were people in the place, and

would then never rest till they had found me out. In this

extremity I went back directly to my castle, pulled up the ladder

after me, and made all things without look as wild and natural as I

could.

Then I prepared myself within, putting myself in a posture of

defence. I loaded all my cannon, as I called them - that is to

say, my muskets, which were mounted upon my new fortification - and

all my pistols, and resolved to defend myself to the last gasp -

not forgetting seriously to commend myself to the Divine

protection, and earnestly to pray to God to deliver me out of the

hands of the barbarians. I continued in this posture about two

hours, and began to be impatient for intelligence abroad, for I had

no spies to send out. After sitting a while longer, and musing

what I should do in this case, I was not able to bear sitting in

ignorance longer; so setting up my ladder to the side of the hill,

where there was a flat place, as I observed before, and then

pulling the ladder after me, I set it up again and mounted the top

of the hill, and pulling out my perspective glass, which I had

taken on purpose, I laid me down flat on my belly on the ground,

and began to look for the place. I presently found there were no

less than nine naked savages sitting round a small fire they had

made, not to warm them, for they had no need of that, the weather

being extremely hot, but, as I supposed, to dress some of their

barbarous diet of human flesh which they had brought with them,

whether alive or dead I could not tell.

They had two canoes with them, which they had hauled up upon the

shore; and as it was then ebb of tide, they seemed to me to wait

for the return of the flood to go away again. It is not easy to

imagine what confusion this sight put me into, especially seeing

them come on my side of the island, and so near to me; but when I

considered their coming must be always with the current of the ebb,

I began afterwards to be more sedate in my mind, being satisfied

that I might go abroad with safety all the time of the flood of

tide, if they were not on shore before; and having made this

observation, I went abroad about my harvest work with the more

composure.

As I expected, so it proved; for as soon as the tide made to the

westward I saw them all take boat and row (or paddle as we call it)

away. I should have observed, that for an hour or more before they

went off they were dancing, and I could easily discern their

postures and gestures by my glass. I could not perceive, by my

nicest observation, but that they were stark naked, and had not the

least covering upon them; but whether they were men or women I

could not distinguish.

As soon as I saw them shipped and gone, I took two guns upon my

shoulders, and two pistols in my girdle, and my great sword by my

side without a scabbard, and with all the speed I was able to make

went away to the hill where I had discovered the first appearance

of all; and as soon as I get thither, which was not in less than

two hours (for I could not go quickly, being so loaded with arms as

I was), I perceived there had been three canoes more of the savages

at that place; and looking out farther, I saw they were all at sea

together, making over for the main. This was a dreadful sight to

me, especially as, going down to the shore, I could see the marks

of horror which the dismal work they had been about had left behind

it - viz. the blood, the bones, and part of the flesh of human

bodies eaten and devoured by those wretches with merriment and

sport. I was so filled with indignation at the sight, that I now

began to premeditate the destruction of the next that I saw there,

let them be whom or how many soever. It seemed evident to me that

the visits which they made thus to this island were not very

frequent, for it was above fifteen months before any more of them

came on shore there again - that is to say, I neither saw them nor

any footsteps or signals of them in all that time; for as to the

rainy seasons, then they are sure not to come abroad, at least not

so far. Yet all this while I lived uncomfortably, by reason of the

constant apprehensions of their coming upon me by surprise: from

whence I observe, that the expectation of evil is more bitter than

the suffering, especially if there is no room to shake off that

expectation or those apprehensions.

During all this time I was in a murdering humour, and spent most of

my hours, which should have been better employed, in contriving how

to circumvent and fall upon them the very next time I should see

them - especially if they should be divided, as they were the last

time, into two parties; nor did I consider at all that if I killed

one party - suppose ten or a dozen - I was still the next day, or

week, or month, to kill another, and so another, even AD INFINITUM,

till I should be, at length, no less a murderer than they were in

being man-eaters - and perhaps much more so. I spent my days now

in great perplexity and anxiety of mind, expecting that I should

one day or other fall, into the hands of these merciless creatures;

and if I did at any time venture abroad, it was not without looking

around me with the greatest care and caution imaginable. And now I

found, to my great comfort, how happy it was that I had provided a

tame flock or herd of goats, for I durst not upon any account fire

my gun, especially near that side of the island where they usually

came, lest I should alarm the savages; and if they had fled from me

now, I was sure to have them come again with perhaps two or three

hundred canoes with them in a few days, and then I knew what to

expect. However, I wore out a year and three months more before I

ever saw any more of the savages, and then I found them again, as I

shall soon observe. It is true they might have been there once or

twice; but either they made no stay, or at least I did not see

them; but in the month of May, as near as I could calculate, and in

my four-and-twentieth year, I had a very strange encounter with

them; of which in its place.

The perturbation of my mind during this fifteen or sixteen months'

interval was very great; I slept unquietly, dreamed always

frightful dreams, and often started out of my sleep in the night.

In the day great troubles overwhelmed my mind; and in the night I

dreamed often of killing the savages and of the reasons why I might

justify doing it.

But to waive all this for a while. It was in the middle of May, on

the sixteenth day, I think, as well as my poor wooden calendar

would reckon, for I marked all upon the post still; I say, it was

on the sixteenth of May that it blew a very great storm of wind all

day, with a great deal of lightning and thunder, and; a very foul

night it was after it. I knew not what was the particular occasion

of it, but as I was reading in the Bible, and taken up with very

serious thoughts about my present condition, I was surprised with

the noise of a gun, as I thought, fired at sea. This was, to be

sure, a surprise quite of a different nature from any I had met

with before; for the notions this put into my thoughts were quite

of another kind. I started up in the greatest haste imaginable;

and, in a trice, clapped my ladder to the middle place of the rock,

and pulled it after me; and mounting it the second time, got to the

top of the hill the very moment that a flash of fire bid me listen

for a second gun, which, accordingly, in about half a minute I

heard; and by the sound, knew that it was from that part of the sea

where I was driven down the current in my boat. I immediately

considered that this must be some ship in distress, and that they

had some comrade, or some other ship in company, and fired these

for signals of distress, and to obtain help. I had the presence of

mind at that minute to think, that though I could not help them, it

might be that they might help me; so I brought together all the dry

wood I could get at hand, and making a good handsome pile, I set it

on fire upon the hill. The wood was dry, and blazed freely; and,

though the wind blew very hard, yet it burned fairly out; so that I

was certain, if there was any such thing as a ship, they must needs

see it. And no doubt they did; for as soon as ever my fire blazed

up, I heard another gun, and after that several others, all from

the same quarter. I plied my fire all night long, till daybreak:

and when it was broad day, and the air cleared up, I saw something

at a great distance at sea, full east of the island, whether a sail

or a hull I could not distinguish - no, not with my glass: the

distance was so great, and the weather still something hazy also;

at least, it was so out at sea.

I looked frequently at it all that day, and soon perceived that it

did not move; so I presently concluded that it was a ship at

anchor; and being eager, you may be sure, to be satisfied, I took

my gun in my hand, and ran towards the south side of the island to

the rocks where I had formerly been carried away by the current;

and getting up there, the weather by this time being perfectly

clear, I could plainly see, to my great sorrow, the wreck of a

ship, cast away in the night upon those concealed rocks which I

found when I was out in my boat; and which rocks, as they checked

the violence of the stream, and made a kind of counter-stream, or

eddy, were the occasion of my recovering from the most desperate,

hopeless condition that ever I had been in in all my life. Thus,

what is one man's safety is another man's destruction; for it seems

these men, whoever they were, being out of their knowledge, and the

rocks being wholly under water, had been driven upon them in the

night, the wind blowing hard at ENE. Had they seen the island, as

I must necessarily suppose they did not, they must, as I thought,

have endeavoured to have saved themselves on shore by the help of

their boat; but their firing off guns for help, especially when

they saw, as I imagined, my fire, filled me with many thoughts.

First, I imagined that upon seeing my light they might have put

themselves into their boat, and endeavoured to make the shore: but

that the sea running very high, they might have been cast away.

Other times I imagined that they might have lost their boat before,

as might be the case many ways; particularly by the breaking of the

sea upon their ship, which many times obliged men to stave, or take

in pieces, their boat, and sometimes to throw it overboard with

their own hands. Other times I imagined they had some other ship

or ships in company, who, upon the signals of distress they made,

had taken them up, and carried them off. Other times I fancied

they were all gone off to sea in their boat, and being hurried away

by the current that I had been formerly in, were carried out into

the great ocean, where there was nothing but misery and perishing:

and that, perhaps, they might by this time think of starving, and

of being in a condition to eat one another.

As all these were but conjectures at best, so, in the condition I

was in, I could do no more than look on upon the misery of the poor

men, and pity them; which had still this good effect upon my side,

that it gave me more and more cause to give thanks to God, who had

so happily and comfortably provided for me in my desolate

condition; and that of two ships' companies, who were now cast away

upon this part of the world, not one life should be spared but

mine. I learned here again to observe, that it is very rare that

the providence of God casts us into any condition so low, or any

misery so great, but we may see something or other to be thankful

for, and may see others in worse circumstances than our own. Such

certainly was the case of these men, of whom I could not so much as

see room to suppose any were saved; nothing could make it rational

so much as to wish or expect that they did not all perish there,

except the possibility only of their being taken up by another ship

in company; and this was but mere possibility indeed, for I saw not

the least sign or appearance of any such thing. I cannot explain,

by any possible energy of words, what a strange longing I felt in

my soul upon this sight, breaking out sometimes thus: "Oh that

there had been but one or two, nay, or but one soul saved out of

this ship, to have escaped to me, that I might but have had one

companion, one fellow-creature, to have spoken to me and to have

conversed with!" In all the time of my solitary life I never felt

so earnest, so strong a desire after the society of my fellow-

creatures, or so deep a regret at the want of it.

There are some secret springs in the affections which, when they

are set a-going by some object in view, or, though not in view, yet

rendered present to the mind by the power of imagination, that

motion carries out the soul, by its impetuosity, to such violent,

eager embracings of the object, that the absence of it is

insupportable. Such were these earnest wishings that but one man

had been saved. I believe I repeated the words, "Oh that it had

been but one!" a thousand times; and my desires were so moved by

it, that when I spoke the words my hands would clinch together, and

my fingers would press the palms of my hands, so that if I had had

any soft thing in my hand I should have crushed it involuntarily;

and the teeth in my head would strike together, and set against one

another so strong, that for some time I could not part them again.

Let the naturalists explain these things, and the reason and manner

of them. All I can do is to describe the fact, which was even

surprising to me when I found it, though I knew not from whence it

proceeded; it was doubtless the effect of ardent wishes, and of

strong ideas formed in my mind, realising the comfort which the

conversation of one of my fellow-Christians would have been to me.

But it was not to be; either their fate or mine, or both, forbade

it; for, till the last year of my being on this island, I never

knew whether any were saved out of that ship or no; and had only

the affliction, some days after, to see the corpse of a drowned boy

come on shore at the end of the island which was next the

shipwreck. He had no clothes on but a seaman's waistcoat, a pair

of open-kneed linen drawers, and a blue linen shirt; but nothing to

direct me so much as to guess what nation he was of. He had

nothing in his pockets but two pieces of eight and a tobacco pipe -

the last was to me of ten times more value than the first.

It was now calm, and I had a great mind to venture out in my boat

to this wreck, not doubting but I might find something on board

that might be useful to me. But that did not altogether press me

so much as the possibility that there might be yet some living

creature on board, whose life I might not only save, but might, by

saving that life, comfort my own to the last degree; and this

thought clung so to my heart that I could not be quiet night or

day, but I must venture out in my boat on board this wreck; and

committing the rest to God's providence, I thought the impression

was so strong upon my mind that it could not be resisted - that it

must come from some invisible direction, and that I should be

wanting to myself if I did not go.

Under the power of this impression, I hastened back to my castle,

prepared everything for my voyage, took a quantity of bread, a

great pot of fresh water, a compass to steer by, a bottle of rum

(for I had still a great deal of that left), and a basket of

raisins; and thus, loading myself with everything necessary. I

went down to my boat, got the water out of her, got her afloat,

loaded all my cargo in her, and then went home again for more. My

second cargo was a great bag of rice, the umbrella to set up over

my head for a shade, another large pot of water, and about two

dozen of small loaves, or barley cakes, more than before, with a

bottle of goat's milk and a cheese; all which with great labour and

sweat I carried to my boat; and praying to God to direct my voyage,

I put out, and rowing or paddling the canoe along the shore, came

at last to the utmost point of the island on the north-east side.

And now I was to launch out into the ocean, and either to venture

or not to venture. I looked on the rapid currents which ran

constantly on both sides of the island at a distance, and which

were very terrible to me from the remembrance of the hazard I had

been in before, and my heart began to fail me; for I foresaw that

if I was driven into either of those currents, I should be carried

a great way out to sea, and perhaps out of my reach or sight of the

island again; and that then, as my boat was but small, if any

little gale of wind should rise, I should be inevitably lost.

These thoughts so oppressed my mind that I began to give over my

enterprise; and having hauled my boat into a little creek on the

shore, I stepped out, and sat down upon a rising bit of ground,

very pensive and anxious, between fear and desire, about my voyage;

when, as I was musing, I could perceive that the tide was turned,

and the flood come on; upon which my going was impracticable for so

many hours. Upon this, presently it occurred to me that I should

go up to the highest piece of ground I could find, and observe, if

I could, how the sets of the tide or currents lay when the flood

came in, that I might judge whether, if I was driven one way out, I

might not expect to be driven another way home, with the same

rapidity of the currents. This thought was no sooner in my head

than I cast my eye upon a little hill which sufficiently overlooked

the sea both ways, and from whence I had a clear view of the

currents or sets of the tide, and which way I was to guide myself

in my return. Here I found, that as the current of ebb set out

close by the south point of the island, so the current of the flood

set in close by the shore of the north side; and that I had nothing

to do but to keep to the north side of the island in my return, and

I should do well enough.

Encouraged by this observation, I resolved the next morning to set

out with the first of the tide; and reposing myself for the night

in my canoe, under the watch-coat I mentioned, I launched out. I

first made a little out to sea, full north, till I began to feel

the benefit of the current, which set eastward, and which carried

me at a great rate; and yet did not so hurry me as the current on

the south side had done before, so as to take from me all

government of the boat; but having a strong steerage with my

paddle, I went at a great rate directly for the wreck, and in less

than two hours I came up to it. It was a dismal sight to look at;

the ship, which by its building was Spanish, stuck fast, jammed in

between two rocks. All the stern and quarter of her were beaten to

pieces by the sea; and as her forecastle, which stuck in the rocks,

had run on with great violence, her mainmast and foremast were

brought by the board - that is to say, broken short off; but her

bowsprit was sound, and the head and bow appeared firm. When I

came close to her, a dog appeared upon her, who, seeing me coming,

yelped and cried; and as soon as I called him, jumped into the sea

to come to me. I took him into the boat, but found him almost dead

with hunger and thirst. I gave him a cake of my bread, and he

devoured it like a ravenous wolf that had been starving a fortnight

in the snow; I then gave the poor creature some fresh water, with

which, if I would have let him, he would have burst himself. After

this I went on board; but the first sight I met with was two men

drowned in the cook-room, or forecastle of the ship, with their

arms fast about one another. I concluded, as is indeed probable,

that when the ship struck, it being in a storm, the sea broke so

high and so continually over her, that the men were not able to

bear it, and were strangled with the constant rushing in of the

water, as much as if they had been under water. Besides the dog,

there was nothing left in the ship that had life; nor any goods,

that I could see, but what were spoiled by the water. There were

some casks of liquor, whether wine or brandy I knew not, which lay

lower in the hold, and which, the water being ebbed out, I could

see; but they were too big to meddle with. I saw several chests,

which I believe belonged to some of the seamen; and I got two of

them into the boat, without examining what was in them. Had the

stern of the ship been fixed, and the forepart broken off, I am

persuaded I might have made a good voyage; for by what I found in

those two chests I had room to suppose the ship had a great deal of

wealth on board; and, if I may guess from the course she steered,

she must have been bound from Buenos Ayres, or the Rio de la Plata,

in the south part of America, beyond the Brazils to the Havannah,

in the Gulf of Mexico, and so perhaps to Spain. She had, no doubt,

a great treasure in her, but of no use, at that time, to anybody;

and what became of the crew I then knew not.

I found, besides these chests, a little cask full of liquor, of

about twenty gallons, which I got into my boat with much

difficulty. There were several muskets in the cabin, and a great

powder-horn, with about four pounds of powder in it; as for the

muskets, I had no occasion for them, so I left them, but took the

powder-horn. I took a fire-shovel and tongs, which I wanted

extremely, as also two little brass kettles, a copper pot to make

chocolate, and a gridiron; and with this cargo, and the dog, I came

away, the tide beginning to make home again - and the same evening,

about an hour within night, I reached the island again, weary and

fatigued to the last degree. I reposed that night in the boat and

in the morning I resolved to harbour what I had got in my new cave,

and not carry it home to my castle. After refreshing myself, I got

all my cargo on shore, and began to examine the particulars. The

cask of liquor I found to be a kind of rum, but not such as we had

at the Brazils; and, in a word, not at all good; but when I came to

open the chests, I found several things of great use to me - for

example, I found in one a fine case of bottles, of an extraordinary

kind, and filled with cordial waters, fine and very good; the

bottles held about three pints each, and were tipped with silver.

I found two pots of very good succades, or sweetmeats, so fastened

also on the top that the salt-water had not hurt them; and two more

of the same, which the water had spoiled. I found some very good

shirts, which were very welcome to me; and about a dozen and a half

of white linen handkerchiefs and coloured neckcloths; the former

were also very welcome, being exceedingly refreshing to wipe my

face in a hot day. Besides this, when I came to the till in the

chest, I found there three great bags of pieces of eight, which

held about eleven hundred pieces in all; and in one of them,

wrapped up in a paper, six doubloons of gold, and some small bars

or wedges of gold; I suppose they might all weigh near a pound. In

the other chest were some clothes, but of little value; but, by the

circumstances, it must have belonged to the gunner's mate; though

there was no powder in it, except two pounds of fine glazed powder,

in three flasks, kept, I suppose, for charging their fowling-pieces

on occasion. Upon the whole, I got very little by this voyage that

was of any use to me; for, as to the money, I had no manner of

occasion for it; it was to me as the dirt under my feet, and I

would have given it all for three or four pair of English shoes and

stockings, which were things I greatly wanted, but had had none on

my feet for many years. I had, indeed, got two pair of shoes now,

which I took off the feet of two drowned men whom I saw in the

wreck, and I found two pair more in one of the chests, which were

very welcome to me; but they were not like our English shoes,

either for ease or service, being rather what we call pumps than

shoes. I found in this seaman's chest about fifty pieces of eight,

in rials, but no gold: I supposed this belonged to a poorer man

than the other, which seemed to belong to some officer. Well,

however, I lugged this money home to my cave, and laid it up, as I

had done that before which I had brought from our own ship; but it

was a great pity, as I said, that the other part of this ship had

not come to my share: for I am satisfied I might have loaded my

canoe several times over with money; and, thought I, if I ever

escape to England, it might lie here safe enough till I come again

and fetch it.

CHAPTER XIV - A DREAM REALISED

HAVING now brought all my things on shore and secured them, I went

back to my boat, and rowed or paddled her along the shore to her

old harbour, where I laid her up, and made the best of my way to my

old habitation, where I found everything safe and quiet. I began

now to repose myself, live after my old fashion, and take care of

my family affairs; and for a while I lived easy enough, only that I

was more vigilant than I used to be, looked out oftener, and did

not go abroad so much; and if at any time I did stir with any

freedom, it was always to the east part of the island, where I was

pretty well satisfied the savages never came, and where I could go

without so many precautions, and such a load of arms and ammunition

as I always carried with me if I went the other way. I lived in

this condition near two years more; but my unlucky head, that was

always to let me know it was born to make my body miserable, was

all these two years filled with projects and designs how, if it

were possible, I might get away from this island: for sometimes I

was for making another voyage to the wreck, though my reason told

me that there was nothing left there worth the hazard of my voyage;

sometimes for a ramble one way, sometimes another - and I believe

verily, if I had had the boat that I went from Sallee in, I should

have ventured to sea, bound anywhere, I knew not whither. I have

been, in all my circumstances, a memento to those who are touched

with the general plague of mankind, whence, for aught I know, one

half of their miseries flow: I mean that of not being satisfied

with the station wherein God and Nature hath placed them - for, not

to look back upon my primitive condition, and the excellent advice

of my father, the opposition to which was, as I may call it, my

ORIGINAL SIN, my subsequent mistakes of the same kind had been the

means of my coming into this miserable condition; for had that

Providence which so happily seated me at the Brazils as a planter

blessed me with confined desires, and I could have been contented

to have gone on gradually, I might have been by this time - I mean

in the time of my being in this island - one of the most

considerable planters in the Brazils - nay, I am persuaded, that by

the improvements I had made in that little time I lived there, and

the increase I should probably have made if I had remained, I might

have been worth a hundred thousand moidores - and what business had

I to leave a settled fortune, a well-stocked plantation, improving

and increasing, to turn supercargo to Guinea to fetch negroes, when

patience and time would have so increased our stock at home, that

we could have bought them at our own door from those whose business

it was to fetch them? and though it had cost us something more, yet

the difference of that price was by no means worth saving at so

great a hazard. But as this is usually the fate of young heads, so

reflection upon the folly of it is as commonly the exercise of more

years, or of the dear-bought experience of time - so it was with me

now; and yet so deep had the mistake taken root in my temper, that

I could not satisfy myself in my station, but was continually

poring upon the means and possibility of my escape from this place;

and that I may, with greater pleasure to the reader, bring on the

remaining part of my story, it may not be improper to give some

account of my first conceptions on the subject of this foolish

scheme for my escape, and how, and upon what foundation, I acted.

I am now to be supposed retired into my castle, after my late

voyage to the wreck, my frigate laid up and secured under water, as

usual, and my condition restored to what it was before: I had more

wealth, indeed, than I had before, but was not at all the richer;

for I had no more use for it than the Indians of Peru had before

the Spaniards came there.

It was one of the nights in the rainy season in March, the four-

and-twentieth year of my first setting foot in this island of

solitude, I was lying in my bed or hammock, awake, very well in

health, had no pain, no distemper, no uneasiness of body, nor any

uneasiness of mind more than ordinary, but could by no means close

my eyes, that is, so as to sleep; no, not a wink all night long,

otherwise than as follows: It is impossible to set down the

innumerable crowd of thoughts that whirled through that great

thoroughfare of the brain, the memory, in this night's time. I ran

over the whole history of my life in miniature, or by abridgment,

as I may call it, to my coming to this island, and also of that

part of my life since I came to this island. In my reflections

upon the state of my case since I came on shore on this island, I

was comparing the happy posture of my affairs in the first years of

my habitation here, with the life of anxiety, fear, and care which

I had lived in ever since I had seen the print of a foot in the

sand. Not that I did not believe the savages had frequented the

island even all the while, and might have been several hundreds of

them at times on shore there; but I had never known it, and was

incapable of any apprehensions about it; my satisfaction was

perfect, though my danger was the same, and I was as happy in not

knowing my danger as if I had never really been exposed to it.

This furnished my thoughts with many very profitable reflections,

and particularly this one: How infinitely good that Providence is,

which has provided, in its government of mankind, such narrow

bounds to his sight and knowledge of things; and though he walks in

the midst of so many thousand dangers, the sight of which, if

discovered to him, would distract his mind and sink his spirits, he

is kept serene and calm, by having the events of things hid from

his eyes, and knowing nothing of the dangers which surround him.

After these thoughts had for some time entertained me, I came to

reflect seriously upon the real danger I had been in for so many

years in this very island, and how I had walked about in the

greatest security, and with all possible tranquillity, even when

perhaps nothing but the brow of a hill, a great tree, or the casual

approach of night, had been between me and the worst kind of

destruction - viz. that of falling into the hands of cannibals and

savages, who would have seized on me with the same view as I would

on a goat or turtle; and have thought it no more crime to kill and

devour me than I did of a pigeon or a curlew. I would unjustly

slander myself if I should say I was not sincerely thankful to my

great Preserver, to whose singular protection I acknowledged, with

great humanity, all these unknown deliverances were due, and

without which I must inevitably have fallen into their merciless

hands.

When these thoughts were over, my head was for some time taken up

in considering the nature of these wretched creatures, I mean the

savages, and how it came to pass in the world that the wise

Governor of all things should give up any of His creatures to such

inhumanity - nay, to something so much below even brutality itself

- as to devour its own kind: but as this ended in some (at that

time) fruitless speculations, it occurred to me to inquire what

part of the world these wretches lived in? how far off the coast

was from whence they came? what they ventured over so far from home

for? what kind of boats they had? and why I might not order myself

and my business so that I might be able to go over thither, as they

were to come to me?

I never so much as troubled myself to consider what I should do

with myself when I went thither; what would become of me if I fell

into the hands of these savages; or how I should escape them if

they attacked me; no, nor so much as how it was possible for me to

reach the coast, and not to be attacked by some or other of them,

without any possibility of delivering myself: and if I should not

fall into their hands, what I should do for provision, or whither I

should bend my course: none of these thoughts, I say, so much as

came in my way; but my mind was wholly bent upon the notion of my

passing over in my boat to the mainland. I looked upon my present

condition as the most miserable that could possibly be; that I was

not able to throw myself into anything but death, that could be

called worse; and if I reached the shore of the main I might

perhaps meet with relief, or I might coast along, as I did on the

African shore, till I came to some inhabited country, and where I

might find some relief; and after all, perhaps I might fall in with

some Christian ship that might take me in: and if the worst came to

the worst, I could but die, which would put an end to all these

miseries at once. Pray note, all this was the fruit of a disturbed

mind, an impatient temper, made desperate, as it were, by the long

continuance of my troubles, and the disappointments I had met in

the wreck I had been on board of, and where I had been so near

obtaining what I so earnestly longed for - somebody to speak to,

and to learn some knowledge from them of the place where I was, and

of the probable means of my deliverance. I was agitated wholly by

these thoughts; all my calm of mind, in my resignation to

Providence, and waiting the issue of the dispositions of Heaven,

seemed to be suspended; and I had as it were no power to turn my

thoughts to anything but to the project of a voyage to the main,

which came upon me with such force, and such an impetuosity of

desire, that it was not to be resisted.

When this had agitated my thoughts for two hours or more, with such

violence that it set my very blood into a ferment, and my pulse

beat as if I had been in a fever, merely with the extraordinary

fervour of my mind about it, Nature - as if I had been fatigued and

exhausted with the very thoughts of it - threw me into a sound

sleep. One would have thought I should have dreamed of it, but I

did not, nor of anything relating to it, but I dreamed that as I

was going out in the morning as usual from my castle, I saw upon

the shore two canoes and eleven savages coming to land, and that

they brought with them another savage whom they were going to kill

in order to eat him; when, on a sudden, the savage that they were

going to kill jumped away, and ran for his life; and I thought in

my sleep that he came running into my little thick grove before my

fortification, to hide himself; and that I seeing him alone, and

not perceiving that the others sought him that way, showed myself

to him, and smiling upon him, encouraged him: that he kneeled down

to me, seeming to pray me to assist him; upon which I showed him my

ladder, made him go up, and carried him into my cave, and he became

my servant; and that as soon as I had got this man, I said to

myself, "Now I may certainly venture to the mainland, for this

fellow will serve me as a pilot, and will tell me what to do, and

whither to go for provisions, and whither not to go for fear of

being devoured; what places to venture into, and what to shun." I

waked with this thought; and was under such inexpressible

impressions of joy at the prospect of my escape in my dream, that

the disappointments which I felt upon coming to myself, and finding

that it was no more than a dream, were equally extravagant the

other way, and threw me into a very great dejection of spirits.

Upon this, however, I made this conclusion: that my only way to go

about to attempt an escape was, to endeavour to get a savage into

my possession: and, if possible, it should be one of their

prisoners, whom they had condemned to be eaten, and should bring

hither to kill. But these thoughts still were attended with this

difficulty: that it was impossible to effect this without attacking

a whole caravan of them, and killing them all; and this was not

only a very desperate attempt, and might miscarry, but, on the

other hand, I had greatly scrupled the lawfulness of it to myself;

and my heart trembled at the thoughts of shedding so much blood,

though it was for my deliverance. I need not repeat the arguments

which occurred to me against this, they being the same mentioned

before; but though I had other reasons to offer now - viz. that

those men were enemies to my life, and would devour me if they

could; that it was self-preservation, in the highest degree, to

deliver myself from this death of a life, and was acting in my own

defence as much as if they were actually assaulting me, and the

like; I say though these things argued for it, yet the thoughts of

shedding human blood for my deliverance were very terrible to me,

and such as I could by no means reconcile myself to for a great

while. However, at last, after many secret disputes with myself,

and after great perplexities about it (for all these arguments, one

way and another, struggled in my head a long time), the eager

prevailing desire of deliverance at length mastered all the rest;

and I resolved, if possible, to get one of these savages into my

hands, cost what it would. My next thing was to contrive how to do

it, and this, indeed, was very difficult to resolve on; but as I

could pitch upon no probable means for it, so I resolved to put

myself upon the watch, to see them when they came on shore, and

leave the rest to the event; taking such measures as the

opportunity should present, let what would be.

With these resolutions in my thoughts, I set myself upon the scout

as often as possible, and indeed so often that I was heartily tired

of it; for it was above a year and a half that I waited; and for

great part of that time went out to the west end, and to the south-

west corner of the island almost every day, to look for canoes, but

none appeared. This was very discouraging, and began to trouble me

much, though I cannot say that it did in this case (as it had done

some time before) wear off the edge of my desire to the thing; but

the longer it seemed to be delayed, the more eager I was for it: in

a word, I was not at first so careful to shun the sight of these

savages, and avoid being seen by them, as I was now eager to be

upon them. Besides, I fancied myself able to manage one, nay, two

or three savages, if I had them, so as to make them entirely slaves

to me, to do whatever I should direct them, and to prevent their

being able at any time to do me any hurt. It was a great while

that I pleased myself with this affair; but nothing still presented

itself; all my fancies and schemes came to nothing, for no savages

came near me for a great while.

About a year and a half after I entertained these notions (and by

long musing had, as it were, resolved them all into nothing, for

want of an occasion to put them into execution), I was surprised

one morning by seeing no less than five canoes all on shore

together on my side the island, and the people who belonged to them

all landed and out of my sight. The number of them broke all my

measures; for seeing so many, and knowing that they always came

four or six, or sometimes more in a boat, I could not tell what to

think of it, or how to take my measures to attack twenty or thirty

men single-handed; so lay still in my castle, perplexed and

discomforted. However, I put myself into the same position for an

attack that I had formerly provided, and was just ready for action,

if anything had presented. Having waited a good while, listening

to hear if they made any noise, at length, being very impatient, I

set my guns at the foot of my ladder, and .clambered up to the top

of the hill, by my two stages, as usual; standing so, however, that

my head did not appear above the hill, so that they could not

perceive me by any means. Here I observed, by the help of my

perspective glass, that they were no less than thirty in number;

that they had a fire kindled, and that they had meat dressed. How

they had cooked it I knew not, or what it was; but they were all

dancing, in I know not how many barbarous gestures and figures,

their own way, round the fire.

While I was thus looking on them, I perceived, by my perspective,

two miserable wretches dragged from the boats, where, it seems,

they were laid by, and were now brought out for the slaughter. I

perceived one of them immediately fall; being knocked down, I

suppose, with a club or wooden sword, for that was their way; and

two or three others were at work immediately, cutting him open for

their cookery, while the other victim was left standing by himself,

till they should be ready for him. In that very moment this poor

wretch, seeing himself a little at liberty and unbound, Nature

inspired him with hopes of life, and he started away from them, and

ran with incredible swiftness along the sands, directly towards me;

I mean towards that part of the coast where my habitation was. I

was dreadfully frightened, I must acknowledge, when I perceived him

run my way; and especially when, as I thought, I saw him pursued by

the whole body: and now I expected that part of my dream was coming

to pass, and that he would certainly take shelter in my grove; but

I could not depend, by any means, upon my dream, that the other

savages would not pursue him thither and find him there. However,

I kept my station, and my spirits began to recover when I found

that there was not above three men that followed him; and still

more was I encouraged, when I found that he outstripped them

exceedingly in running, and gained ground on them; so that, if he

could but hold out for half-an-hour, I saw easily he would fairly

get away from them all.

There was between them and my castle the creek, which I mentioned

often in the first part of my story, where I landed my cargoes out

of the ship; and this I saw plainly he must necessarily swim over,

or the poor wretch would be taken there; but when the savage

escaping came thither, he made nothing of it, though the tide was

then up; but plunging in, swam through in about thirty strokes, or

thereabouts, landed, and ran with exceeding strength and swiftness.

When the three persons came to the creek, I found that two of them

could swim, but the third could not, and that, standing on the

other side, he looked at the others, but went no farther, and soon

after went softly back again; which, as it happened, was very well

for him in the end. I observed that the two who swam were yet more

than twice as strong swimming over the creek as the fellow was that

fled from them. It came very warmly upon my thoughts, and indeed

irresistibly, that now was the time to get me a servant, and,

perhaps, a companion or assistant; and that I was plainly called by

Providence to save this poor creature's life. I immediately ran

down the ladders with all possible expedition, fetched my two guns,

for they were both at the foot of the ladders, as I observed

before, and getting up again with the same haste to the top of the

hill, I crossed towards the sea; and having a very short cut, and

all down hill, placed myself in the way between the pursuers and

the pursued, hallowing aloud to him that fled, who, looking back,

was at first perhaps as much frightened at me as at them; but I

beckoned with my hand to him to come back; and, in the meantime, I

slowly advanced towards the two that followed; then rushing at once

upon the foremost, I knocked him down with the stock of my piece.

I was loath to fire, because I would not have the rest hear;

though, at that distance, it would not have been easily heard, and

being out of sight of the smoke, too, they would not have known

what to make of it. Having knocked this fellow down, the other who

pursued him stopped, as if he had been frightened, and I advanced

towards him: but as I came nearer, I perceived presently he had a

bow and arrow, and was fitting it to shoot at me: so I was then

obliged to shoot at him first, which I did, and killed him at the

first shot. The poor savage who fled, but had stopped, though he

saw both his enemies fallen and killed, as he thought, yet was so

frightened with the fire and noise of my piece that he stood stock

still, and neither came forward nor went backward, though he seemed

rather inclined still to fly than to come on. I hallooed again to

him, and made signs to come forward, which he easily understood,

and came a little way; then stopped again, and then a little

farther, and stopped again; and I could then perceive that he stood

trembling, as if he had been taken prisoner, and had just been to

be killed, as his two enemies were. I beckoned to him again to

come to me, and gave him all the signs of encouragement that I

could think of; and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every

ten or twelve steps, in token of acknowledgment for saving his

life. I smiled at him, and looked pleasantly, and beckoned to him

to come still nearer; at length he came close to me; and then he

kneeled down again, kissed the ground, and laid his head upon the

ground, and taking me by the foot, set my foot upon his head; this,

it seems, was in token of swearing to be my slave for ever. I took

him up and made much of him, and encouraged him all I could. But

there was more work to do yet; for I perceived the savage whom I

had knocked down was not killed, but stunned with the blow, and

began to come to himself: so I pointed to him, and showed him the

savage, that he was not dead; upon this he spoke some words to me,

and though I could not understand them, yet I thought they were

pleasant to hear; for they were the first sound of a man's voice

that I had heard, my own excepted, for above twenty-five years.

But there was no time for such reflections now; the savage who was

knocked down recovered himself so far as to sit up upon the ground,

and I perceived that my savage began to be afraid; but when I saw

that, I presented my other piece at the man, as if I would shoot

him: upon this my savage, for so I call him now, made a motion to

me to lend him my sword, which hung naked in a belt by my side,

which I did. He no sooner had it, but he runs to his enemy, and at

one blow cut off his head so cleverly, no executioner in Germany

could have done it sooner or better; which I thought very strange

for one who, I had reason to believe, never saw a sword in his life

before, except their own wooden swords: however, it seems, as I

learned afterwards, they make their wooden swords so sharp, so

heavy, and the wood is so hard, that they will even cut off heads

with them, ay, and arms, and that at one blow, too. When he had

done this, he comes laughing to me in sign of triumph, and brought

me the sword again, and with abundance of gestures which I did not

understand, laid it down, with the head of the savage that he had

killed, just before me. But that which astonished him most was to

know how I killed the other Indian so far off; so, pointing to him,

he made signs to me to let him go to him; and I bade him go, as

well as I could. When he came to him, he stood like one amazed,

looking at him, turning him first on one side, then on the other;

looked at the wound the bullet had made, which it seems was just in

his breast, where it had made a hole, and no great quantity of

blood had followed; but he had bled inwardly, for he was quite

dead. He took up his bow and arrows, and came back; so I turned to

go away, and beckoned him to follow me, making signs to him that

more might come after them. Upon this he made signs to me that he

should bury them with sand, that they might not be seen by the

rest, if they followed; and so I made signs to him again to do so.

He fell to work; and in an instant he had scraped a hole in the

sand with his hands big enough to bury the first in, and then

dragged him into it, and covered him; and did so by the other also;

I believe he had him buried them both in a quarter of an hour.

Then, calling away, I carried him, not to my castle, but quite away

to my cave, on the farther part of the island: so I did not let my

dream come to pass in that part, that he came into my grove for

shelter. Here I gave him bread and a bunch of raisins to eat, and

a draught of water, which I found he was indeed in great distress

for, from his running: and having refreshed him, I made signs for

him to go and lie down to sleep, showing him a place where I had

laid some rice-straw, and a blanket upon it, which I used to sleep

upon myself sometimes; so the poor creature lay down, and went to

sleep.

He was a comely, handsome fellow, perfectly well made, with

straight, strong limbs, not too large; tall, and well-shaped; and,

as I reckon, about twenty-six years of age. He had a very good

countenance, not a fierce and surly aspect, but seemed to have

something very manly in his face; and yet he had all the sweetness

and softness of a European in his countenance, too, especially when

he smiled. His hair was long and black, not curled like wool; his

forehead very high and large; and a great vivacity and sparkling

sharpness in his eyes. The colour of his skin was not quite black,

but very tawny; and yet not an ugly, yellow, nauseous tawny, as the

Brazilians and Virginians, and other natives of America are, but of

a bright kind of a dun olive-colour, that had in it something very

agreeable, though not very easy to describe. His face was round

and plump; his nose small, not flat, like the negroes; a very good

mouth, thin lips, and his fine teeth well set, and as white as

ivory.

After he had slumbered, rather than slept, about half-an-hour, he

awoke again, and came out of the cave to me: for I had been milking

my goats which I had in the enclosure just by: when he espied me he

came running to me, laying himself down again upon the ground, with

all the possible signs of an humble, thankful disposition, making a

great many antic gestures to show it. At last he lays his head

flat upon the ground, close to my foot, and sets my other foot upon

his head, as he had done before; and after this made all the signs

to me of subjection, servitude, and submission imaginable, to let

me know how he would serve me so long as he lived. I understood

him in many things, and let him know I was very well pleased with

him. In a little time I began to speak to him; and teach him to

speak to me: and first, I let him know his name should be Friday,

which was the day I saved his life: I called him so for the memory

of the time. I likewise taught him to say Master; and then let him

know that was to be my name: I likewise taught him to say Yes and

No and to know the meaning of them. I gave him some milk in an

earthen pot, and let him see me drink it before him, and sop my

bread in it; and gave him a cake of bread to do the like, which he

quickly complied with, and made signs that it was very good for

him. I kept there with him all that night; but as soon as it was

day I beckoned to him to come with me, and let him know I would

give him some clothes; at which he seemed very glad, for he was

stark naked. As we went by the place where he had buried the two

men, he pointed exactly to the place, and showed me the marks that

he had made to find them again, making signs to me that we should

dig them up again and eat them. At this I appeared very angry,

expressed my abhorrence of it, made as if I would vomit at the

thoughts of it, and beckoned with my hand to him to come away,

which he did immediately, with great submission. I then led him up

to the top of the hill, to see if his enemies were gone; and

pulling out my glass I looked, and saw plainly the place where they

had been, but no appearance of them or their canoes; so that it was

plain they were gone, and had left their two comrades behind them,

without any search after them.

But I was not content with this discovery; but having now more

courage, and consequently more curiosity, I took my man Friday with

me, giving him the sword in his hand, with the bow and arrows at

his back, which I found he could use very dexterously, making him

carry one gun for me, and I two for myself; and away we marched to

the place where these creatures had been; for I had a mind now to

get some further intelligence of them. When I came to the place my

very blood ran chill in my veins, and my heart sunk within me, at

the horror of the spectacle; indeed, it was a dreadful sight, at

least it was so to me, though Friday made nothing of it. The place

was covered with human bones, the ground dyed with their blood, and

great pieces of flesh left here and there, half-eaten, mangled, and

scorched; and, in short, all the tokens of the triumphant feast

they had been making there, after a victory over their enemies. I

saw three skulls, five hands, and the bones of three or four legs

and feet, and abundance of other parts of the bodies; and Friday,

by his signs, made me understand that they brought over four

prisoners to feast upon; that three of them were eaten up, and that

he, pointing to himself, was the fourth; that there had been a

great battle between them and their next king, of whose subjects,

it seems, he had been one, and that they had taken a great number

of prisoners; all which were carried to several places by those who

had taken them in the fight, in order to feast upon them, as was

done here by these wretches upon those they brought hither.

I caused Friday to gather all the skulls, bones, flesh, and

whatever remained, and lay them together in a heap, and make a

great fire upon it, and burn them all to ashes. I found Friday had

still a hankering stomach after some of the flesh, and was still a

cannibal in his nature; but I showed so much abhorrence at the very

thoughts of it, and at the least appearance of it, that he durst

not discover it: for I had, by some means, let him know that I

would kill him if he offered it.

When he had done this, we came back to our castle; and there I fell

to work for my man Friday; and first of all, I gave him a pair of

linen drawers, which I had out of the poor gunner's chest I

mentioned, which I found in the wreck, and which, with a little

alteration, fitted him very well; and then I made him a jerkin of

goat's skin, as well as my skill would allow (for I was now grown a

tolerably good tailor); and I gave him a cap which I made of hare's

skin, very convenient, and fashionable enough; and thus he was

clothed, for the present, tolerably well, and was mighty well

pleased to see himself almost as well clothed as his master. It is

true he went awkwardly in these clothes at first: wearing the

drawers was very awkward to him, and the sleeves of the waistcoat

galled his shoulders and the inside of his arms; but a little

easing them where he complained they hurt him, and using himself to

them, he took to them at length very well.

The next day, after I came home to my hutch with him, I began to

consider where I should lodge him: and that I might do well for him

and yet be perfectly easy myself, I made a little tent for him in

the vacant place between my two fortifications, in the inside of

the last, and in the outside of the first. As there was a door or

entrance there into my cave, I made a formal framed door-case, and

a door to it, of boards, and set it up in the passage, a little

within the entrance; and, causing the door to open in the inside, I

barred it up in the night, taking in my ladders, too; so that

Friday could no way come at me in the inside of my innermost wall,

without making so much noise in getting over that it must needs

awaken me; for my first wall had now a complete roof over it of

long poles, covering all my tent, and leaning up to the side of the

hill; which was again laid across with smaller sticks, instead of

laths, and then thatched over a great thickness with the rice-

straw, which was strong, like reeds; and at the hole or place which

was left to go in or out by the ladder I had placed a kind of trap-

door, which, if it had been attempted on the outside, would not

have opened at all, but would have fallen down and made a great

noise - as to weapons, I took them all into my side every night.

But I needed none of all this precaution; for never man had a more

faithful, loving, sincere servant than Friday was to me: without

passions, sullenness, or designs, perfectly obliged and engaged;

his very affections were tied to me, like those of a child to a

father; and I daresay he would have sacrificed his life to save

mine upon any occasion whatsoever - the many testimonies he gave me

of this put it out of doubt, and soon convinced me that I needed to

use no precautions for my safety on his account.

This frequently gave me occasion to observe, and that with wonder,

that however it had pleased God in His providence, and in the

government of the works of His hands, to take from so great a part

of the world of His creatures the best uses to which their

faculties and the powers of their souls are adapted, yet that He

has bestowed upon them the same powers, the same reason, the same

affections, the same sentiments of kindness and obligation, the

same passions and resentments of wrongs, the same sense of

gratitude, sincerity, fidelity, and all the capacities of doing

good and receiving good that He has given to us; and that when He

pleases to offer them occasions of exerting these, they are as

ready, nay, more ready, to apply them to the right uses for which

they were bestowed than we are. This made me very melancholy

sometimes, in reflecting, as the several occasions presented, how

mean a use we make of all these, even though we have these powers

enlightened by the great lamp of instruction, the Spirit of God,

and by the knowledge of His word added to our understanding; and

why it has pleased God to hide the like saving knowledge from so

many millions of souls, who, if I might judge by this poor savage,

would make a much better use of it than we did. From hence I

sometimes was led too far, to invade the sovereignty of Providence,

and, as it were, arraign the justice of so arbitrary a disposition

of things, that should hide that sight from some, and reveal it -

to others, and yet expect a like duty from both; but I shut it up,

and checked my thoughts with this conclusion: first, that we did

not know by what light and law these should be condemned; but that

as God was necessarily, and by the nature of His being, infinitely

holy and just, so it could not be, but if these creatures were all

sentenced to absence from Himself, it was on account of sinning

against that light which, as the Scripture says, was a law to

themselves, and by such rules as their consciences would

acknowledge to be just, though the foundation was not discovered to

us; and secondly, that still as we all are the clay in the hand of

the potter, no vessel could say to him, "Why hast thou formed me

thus?"

But to return to my new companion. I was greatly delighted with

him, and made it my business to teach him everything that was

proper to make him useful, handy, and helpful; but especially to

make him speak, and understand me when I spoke; and he was the

aptest scholar that ever was; and particularly was so merry, so

constantly diligent, and so pleased when he could but understand

me, or make me understand him, that it was very pleasant for me to

talk to him. Now my life began to be so easy that I began to say

to myself that could I but have been safe from more savages, I

cared not if I was never to remove from the place where I lived.

CHAPTER XV - FRIDAY'S EDUCATION

AFTER I had been two or three days returned to my castle, I thought

that, in order to bring Friday off from his horrid way of feeding,

and from the relish of a cannibal's stomach, I ought to let him

taste other flesh; so I took him out with me one morning to the

woods. I went, indeed, intending to kill a kid out of my own

flock; and bring it home and dress it; but as I was going I saw a

she-goat lying down in the shade, and two young kids sitting by

her. I catched hold of Friday. "Hold," said I, "stand still;" and

made signs to him not to stir: immediately I presented my piece,

shot, and killed one of the kids. The poor creature, who had at a

distance, indeed, seen me kill the savage, his enemy, but did not

know, nor could imagine how it was done, was sensibly surprised,

trembled, and shook, and looked so amazed that I thought he would

have sunk down. He did not see the kid I shot at, or perceive I

had killed it, but ripped up his waistcoat to feel whether he was

not wounded; and, as I found presently, thought I was resolved to

kill him: for he came and kneeled down to me, and embracing my

knees, said a great many things I did not understand; but I could

easily see the meaning was to pray me not to kill him.

I soon found a way to convince him that I would do him no harm; and

taking him up by the hand, laughed at him, and pointing to the kid

which I had killed, beckoned to him to run and fetch it, which he

did: and while he was wondering, and looking to see how the

creature was killed, I loaded my gun again. By-and-by I saw a

great fowl, like a hawk, sitting upon a tree within shot; so, to

let Friday understand a little what I would do, I called him to me

again, pointed at the fowl, which was indeed a parrot, though I

thought it had been a hawk; I say, pointing to the parrot, and to

my gun, and to the ground under the parrot, to let him see I would

make it fall, I made him understand that I would shoot and kill

that bird; accordingly, I fired, and bade him look, and immediately

he saw the parrot fall. He stood like one frightened again,

notwithstanding all I had said to him; and I found he was the more

amazed, because he did not see me put anything into the gun, but

thought that there must be some wonderful fund of death and

destruction in that thing, able to kill man, beast, bird, or

anything near or far off; and the astonishment this created in him

was such as could not wear off for a long time; and I believe, if I

would have let him, he would have worshipped me and my gun. As for

the gun itself, he would not so much as touch it for several days

after; but he would speak to it and talk to it, as if it had

answered him, when he was by himself; which, as I afterwards

learned of him, was to desire it not to kill him. Well, after his

astonishment was a little over at this, I pointed to him to run and

fetch the bird I had shot, which he did, but stayed some time; for

the parrot, not being quite dead, had fluttered away a good

distance from the place where she fell: however, he found her, took

her up, and brought her to me; and as I had perceived his ignorance

about the gun before, I took this advantage to charge the gun

again, and not to let him see me do it, that I might be ready for

any other mark that might present; but nothing more offered at that

time: so I brought home the kid, and the same evening I took the

skin off, and cut it out as well as I could; and having a pot fit

for that purpose, I boiled or stewed some of the flesh, and made

some very good broth. After I had begun to eat some I gave some to

my man, who seemed very glad of it, and liked it very well; but

that which was strangest to him was to see me eat salt with it. He

made a sign to me that the salt was not good to eat; and putting a

little into his own mouth, he seemed to nauseate it, and would spit

and sputter at it, washing his mouth with fresh water after it: on

the other hand, I took some meat into my mouth without salt, and I

pretended to spit and sputter for want of salt, as much as he had

done at the salt; but it would not do; he would never care for salt

with meat or in his broth; at least, not for a great while, and

then but a very little.

Having thus fed him with boiled meat and broth, I was resolved to

feast him the next day by roasting a piece of the kid: this I did

by hanging it before the fire on a string, as I had seen many

people do in England, setting two poles up, one on each side of the

fire, and one across the top, and tying the string to the cross

stick, letting the meat turn continually. This Friday admired very

much; but when he came to taste the flesh, he took so many ways to

tell me how well he liked it, that I could not but understand him:

and at last he told me, as well as he could, he would never eat

man's flesh any more, which I was very glad to hear.

The next day I set him to work beating some corn out, and sifting

it in the manner I used to do, as I observed before; and he soon

understood how to do it as well as I, especially after he had seen

what the meaning of it was, and that it was to make bread of; for

after that I let him see me make my bread, and bake it too; and in

a little time Friday was able to do all the work for me as well as

I could do it myself.

I began now to consider, that having two mouths to feed instead of

one, I must provide more ground for my harvest, and plant a larger

quantity of corn than I used to do; so I marked out a larger piece

of land, and began the fence in the same manner as before, in which

Friday worked not only very willingly and very hard, but did it

very cheerfully: and I told him what it was for; that it was for

corn to make more bread, because he was now with me, and that I

might have enough for him and myself too. He appeared very

sensible of that part, and let me know that he thought I had much

more labour upon me on his account than I had for myself; and that

he would work the harder for me if I would tell him what to do.

This was the pleasantest year of all the life I led in this place.

Friday began to talk pretty well, and understand the names of

almost everything I had occasion to call for, and of every place I

had to send him to, and talked a great deal to me; so that, in

short, I began now to have some use for my tongue again, which,

indeed, I had very little occasion for before. Besides the

pleasure of talking to him, I had a singular satisfaction in the

fellow himself: his simple, unfeigned honesty appeared to me more

and more every day, and I began really to love the creature; and on

his side I believe he loved me more than it was possible for him

ever to love anything before.

I had a mind once to try if he had any inclination for his own

country again; and having taught him English so well that he could

answer me almost any question, I asked him whether the nation that

he belonged to never conquered in battle? At which he smiled, and

said - "Yes, yes, we always fight the better;" that is, he meant

always get the better in fight; and so we began the following

discourse:-

MASTER. - You always fight the better; how came you to be taken

prisoner, then, Friday?

FRIDAY. - My nation beat much for all that.

MASTER. - How beat? If your nation beat them, how came you to be

taken?

FRIDAY. - They more many than my nation, in the place where me was;

they take one, two, three, and me: my nation over-beat them in the

yonder place, where me no was; there my nation take one, two, great

thousand.

MASTER. - But why did not your side recover you from the hands of

your enemies, then?

FRIDAY. - They run, one, two, three, and me, and make go in the

canoe; my nation have no canoe that time.

MASTER. - Well, Friday, and what does your nation do with the men

they take? Do they carry them away and eat them, as these did?

FRIDAY. - Yes, my nation eat mans too; eat all up.

MASTER. - Where do they carry them?

FRIDAY. - Go to other place, where they think.

MASTER. - Do they come hither?

FRIDAY. - Yes, yes, they come hither; come other else place.

MASTER. - Have you been here with them?

FRIDAY. - Yes, I have been here (points to the NW. side of the

island, which, it seems, was their side).

By this I understood that my man Friday had formerly been among the

savages who used to come on shore on the farther part of the

island, on the same man-eating occasions he was now brought for;

and some time after, when I took the courage to carry him to that

side, being the same I formerly mentioned, he presently knew the

place, and told me he was there once, when they ate up twenty men,

two women, and one child; he could not tell twenty in English, but

he numbered them by laying so many stones in a row, and pointing to

me to tell them over.

I have told this passage, because it introduces what follows: that

after this discourse I had with him, I asked him how far it was

from our island to the shore, and whether the canoes were not often

lost. He told me there was no danger, no canoes ever lost: but

that after a little way out to sea, there was a current and wind,

always one way in the morning, the other in the afternoon. This I

understood to be no more than the sets of the tide, as going out or

coming in; but I afterwards understood it was occasioned by the

great draft and reflux of the mighty river Orinoco, in the mouth or

gulf of which river, as I found afterwards, our island lay; and

that this land, which I perceived to be W. and NW., was the great

island Trinidad, on the north point of the mouth of the river. I

asked Friday a thousand questions about the country, the

inhabitants, the sea, the coast, and what nations were near; he

told me all he knew with the greatest openness imaginable. I asked

him the names of the several nations of his sort of people, but

could get no other name than Caribs; from whence I easily

understood that these were the Caribbees, which our maps place on

the part of America which reaches from the mouth of the river

Orinoco to Guiana, and onwards to St. Martha. He told me that up a

great way beyond the moon, that was beyond the setting of the moon,

which must be west from their country, there dwelt white bearded

men, like me, and pointed to my great whiskers, which I mentioned

before; and that they had killed much mans, that was his word: by

all which I understood he meant the Spaniards, whose cruelties in

America had been spread over the whole country, and were remembered

by all the nations from father to son.

I inquired if he could tell me how I might go from this island, and

get among those white men. He told me, "Yes, yes, you may go in

two canoe." I could not understand what he meant, or make him

describe to me what he meant by two canoe, till at last, with great

difficulty, I found he meant it must be in a large boat, as big as

two canoes. This part of Friday's discourse I began to relish very

well; and from this time I entertained some hopes that, one time or

other, I might find an opportunity to make my escape from this

place, and that this poor savage might be a means to help me.

During the long time that Friday had now been with me, and that he

began to speak to me, and understand me, I was not wanting to lay a

foundation of religious knowledge in his mind; particularly I asked

him one time, who made him. The creature did not understand me at

all, but thought I had asked who was his father - but I took it up

by another handle, and asked him who made the sea, the ground we

walked on, and the hills and woods. He told me, "It was one

Benamuckee, that lived beyond all;" he could describe nothing of

this great person, but that he was very old, "much older," he said,

"than the sea or land, than the moon or the stars." I asked him

then, if this old person had made all things, why did not all

things worship him? He looked very grave, and, with a perfect look

of innocence, said, "All things say O to him." I asked him if the

people who die in his country went away anywhere? He said, "Yes;

they all went to Benamuckee." Then I asked him whether those they

eat up went thither too. He said, "Yes."

From these things, I began to instruct him in the knowledge of the

true God; I told him that the great Maker of all things lived up

there, pointing up towards heaven; that He governed the world by

the same power and providence by which He made it; that He was

omnipotent, and could do everything for us, give everything to us,

take everything from us; and thus, by degrees, I opened his eyes.

He listened with great attention, and received with pleasure the

notion of Jesus Christ being sent to redeem us; and of the manner

of making our prayers to God, and His being able to hear us, even

in heaven. He told me one day, that if our God could hear us, up

beyond the sun, he must needs be a greater God than their

Benamuckee, who lived but a little way off, and yet could not hear

till they went up to the great mountains where he dwelt to speak to

them. I asked him if ever he went thither to speak to him. He

said, "No; they never went that were young men; none went thither

but the old men," whom he called their Oowokakee; that is, as I

made him explain to me, their religious, or clergy; and that they

went to say O (so he called saying prayers), and then came back and

told them what Benamuckee said. By this I observed, that there is

priestcraft even among the most blinded, ignorant pagans in the

world; and the policy of making a secret of religion, in order to

preserve the veneration of the people to the clergy, not only to be

found in the Roman, but, perhaps, among all religions in the world,

even among the most brutish and barbarous savages.

I endeavoured to clear up this fraud to my man Friday; and told him

that the pretence of their old men going up to the mountains to say

O to their god Benamuckee was a cheat; and their bringing word from

thence what he said was much more so; that if they met with any

answer, or spake with any one there, it must be with an evil

spirit; and then I entered into a long discourse with him about the

devil, the origin of him, his rebellion against God, his enmity to

man, the reason of it, his setting himself up in the dark parts of

the world to be worshipped instead of God, and as God, and the many

stratagems he made use of to delude mankind to their ruin; how he

had a secret access to our passions and to our affections, and to

adapt his snares to our inclinations, so as to cause us even to be

our own tempters, and run upon our destruction by our own choice.

I found it was not so easy to imprint right notions in his mind

about the devil as it was about the being of a God. Nature

assisted all my arguments to evidence to him even the necessity of

a great First Cause, an overruling, governing Power, a secret

directing Providence, and of the equity and justice of paying

homage to Him that made us, and the like; but there appeared

nothing of this kind in the notion of an evil spirit, of his

origin, his being, his nature, and above all, of his inclination to

do evil, and to draw us in to do so too; and the poor creature

puzzled me once in such a manner, by a question merely natural and

innocent, that I scarce knew what to say to him. I had been

talking a great deal to him of the power of God, His omnipotence,

His aversion to sin, His being a consuming fire to the workers of

iniquity; how, as He had made us all, He could destroy us and all

the world in a moment; and he listened with great seriousness to me

all the while. After this I had been telling him how the devil was

God's enemy in the hearts of men, and used all his malice and skill

to defeat the good designs of Providence, and to ruin the kingdom

of Christ in the world, and the like. "Well," says Friday, "but

you say God is so strong, so great; is He not much strong, much

might as the devil?" "Yes, yes," says I, "Friday; God is stronger

than the devil - God is above the devil, and therefore we pray to

God to tread him down under our feet, and enable us to resist his

temptations and quench his fiery darts." "But," says he again, "if

God much stronger, much might as the wicked devil, why God no kill

the devil, so make him no more do wicked?" I was strangely

surprised at this question; and, after all, though I was now an old

man, yet I was but a young doctor, and ill qualified for a casuist

or a solver of difficulties; and at first I could not tell what to

say; so I pretended not to hear him, and asked him what he said;

but he was too earnest for an answer to forget his question, so

that he repeated it in the very same broken words as above. By

this time I had recovered myself a little, and I said, "God will at

last punish him severely; he is reserved for the judgment, and is

to be cast into the bottomless pit, to dwell with everlasting

fire." This did not satisfy Friday; but he returns upon me,

repeating my words, "'RESERVE AT LAST!' me no understand - but why

not kill the devil now; not kill great ago?" "You may as well ask

me," said I, "why God does not kill you or me, when we do wicked

things here that offend Him - we are preserved to repent and be

pardoned." He mused some time on this. "Well, well," says he,

mighty affectionately, "that well - so you, I, devil, all wicked,

all preserve, repent, God pardon all." Here I was run down again

by him to the last degree; and it was a testimony to me, how the

mere notions of nature, though they will guide reasonable creatures

to the knowledge of a God, and of a worship or homage due to the

supreme being of God, as the consequence of our nature, yet nothing

but divine revelation can form the knowledge of Jesus Christ, and

of redemption purchased for us; of a Mediator of the new covenant,

and of an Intercessor at the footstool of God's throne; I say,

nothing but a revelation from Heaven can form these in the soul;

and that, therefore, the gospel of our Lord and Saviour Jesus

Christ, I mean the Word of God, and the Spirit of God, promised for

the guide and sanctifier of His people, are the absolutely

necessary instructors of the souls of men in the saving knowledge

of God and the means of salvation.

I therefore diverted the present discourse between me and my man,

rising up hastily, as upon some sudden occasion of going out; then

sending him for something a good way off, I seriously prayed to God

that He would enable me to instruct savingly this poor savage;

assisting, by His Spirit, the heart of the poor ignorant creature

to receive the light of the knowledge of God in Christ, reconciling

him to Himself, and would guide me so to speak to him from the Word

of God that his conscience might be convinced, his eyes opened, and

his soul saved. When he came again to me, I entered into a long

discourse with him upon the subject of the redemption of man by the

Saviour of the world, and of the doctrine of the gospel preached

from Heaven, viz. of repentance towards God, and faith in our

blessed Lord Jesus. I then explained to him as well as I could why

our blessed Redeemer took not on Him the nature of angels but the

seed of Abraham; and how, for that reason, the fallen angels had no

share in the redemption; that He came only to the lost sheep of the

house of Israel, and the like.

I had, God knows, more sincerity than knowledge in all the methods

I took for this poor creature's instruction, and must acknowledge,

what I believe all that act upon the same principle will find, that

in laying things open to him, I really informed and instructed

myself in many things that either I did not know or had not fully

considered before, but which occurred naturally to my mind upon

searching into them, for the information of this poor savage; and I

had more affection in my inquiry after things upon this occasion

than ever I felt before: so that, whether this poor wild wretch was

better for me or no, I had great reason to be thankful that ever he

came to me; my grief sat lighter, upon me; my habitation grew

comfortable to me beyond measure: and when I reflected that in this

solitary life which I have been confined to, I had not only been

moved to look up to heaven myself, and to seek the Hand that had

brought me here, but was now to be made an instrument, under

Providence, to save the life, and, for aught I knew, the soul of a

poor savage, and bring him to the true knowledge of religion and of

the Christian doctrine, that he might know Christ Jesus, in whom is

life eternal; I say, when I reflected upon all these things, a

secret joy ran through every part of My soul, and I frequently

rejoiced that ever I was brought to this place, which I had so

often thought the most dreadful of all afflictions that could

possibly have befallen me.

I continued in this thankful frame all the remainder of my time;

and the conversation which employed the hours between Friday and me

was such as made the three years which we lived there together

perfectly and completely happy, if any such thing as complete

happiness can be formed in a sublunary state. This savage was now

a good Christian, a much better than I; though I have reason to

hope, and bless God for it, that we were equally penitent, and

comforted, restored penitents. We had here the Word of God to

read, and no farther off from His Spirit to instruct than if we had

been in England. I always applied myself, in reading the

Scripture, to let him know, as well as I could, the meaning of what

I read; and he again, by his serious inquiries and questionings,

made me, as I said before, a much better scholar in the Scripture

knowledge than I should ever have been by my own mere private

reading. Another thing I cannot refrain from observing here also,

from experience in this retired part of my life, viz. how infinite

and inexpressible a blessing it is that the knowledge of God, and

of the doctrine of salvation by Christ Jesus, is so plainly laid

down in the Word of God, so easy to be received and understood,

that, as the bare reading the Scripture made me capable of

understanding enough of my duty to carry me directly on to the

great work of sincere repentance for my sins, and laying hold of a

Saviour for life and salvation, to a stated reformation in

practice, and obedience to all God's commands, and this without any

teacher or instructor, I mean human; so the same plain instruction

sufficiently served to the enlightening this savage creature, and

bringing him to be such a Christian as I have known few equal to

him in my life.

As to all the disputes, wrangling, strife, and contention which

have happened in the world about religion, whether niceties in

doctrines or schemes of church government, they were all perfectly

useless to us, and, for aught I can yet see, they have been so to

the rest of the world. We had the sure guide to heaven, viz. the

Word of God; and we had, blessed be God, comfortable views of the

Spirit of God teaching and instructing by His word, leading us into

all truth, and making us both willing and obedient to the

instruction of His word. And I cannot see the least use that the

greatest knowledge of the disputed points of religion, which have

made such confusion in the world, would have been to us, if we

could have obtained it. But I must go on with the historical part

of things, and take every part in its order.

After Friday and I became more intimately acquainted, and that he

could understand almost all I said to him, and speak pretty

fluently, though in broken English, to me, I acquainted him with my

own history, or at least so much of it as related to my coming to

this place: how I had lived there, and how long; I let him into the

mystery, for such it was to him, of gunpowder and bullet, and

taught him how to shoot. I gave him a knife, which he was

wonderfully delighted with; and I made him a belt, with a frog

hanging to it, such as in England we wear hangers in; and in the

frog, instead of a hanger, I gave him a hatchet, which was not only

as good a weapon in some cases, but much more useful upon other

occasions.

I described to him the country of Europe, particularly England,

which I came from; how we lived, how we worshipped God, how we

behaved to one another, and how we traded in ships to all parts of

the world. I gave him an account of the wreck which I had been on

board of, and showed him, as near as I could, the place where she

lay; but she was all beaten in pieces before, and gone. I showed

him the ruins of our boat, which we lost when we escaped, and which

I could not stir with my whole strength then; but was now fallen

almost all to pieces. Upon seeing this boat, Friday stood, musing

a great while, and said nothing. I asked him what it was he

studied upon. At last says he, "Me see such boat like come to

place at my nation." I did not understand him a good while; but at

last, when I had examined further into it, I understood by him that

a boat, such as that had been, came on shore upon the country where

he lived: that is, as he explained it, was driven thither by stress

of weather. I presently imagined that some European ship must have

been cast away upon their coast, and the boat might get loose and

drive ashore; but was so dull that I never once thought of men

making their escape from a wreck thither, much less whence they

might come: so I only inquired after a description of the boat.

Friday described the boat to me well enough; but brought me better

to understand him when he added with some warmth, "We save the

white mans from drown." Then I presently asked if there were any

white mans, as he called them, in the boat. "Yes," he said; "the

boat full of white mans." I asked him how many. He told upon his

fingers seventeen. I asked him then what became of them. He told

me, "They live, they dwell at my nation."

This put new thoughts into my head; for I presently imagined that

these might be the men belonging to the ship that was cast away in

the sight of my island, as I now called it; and who, after the ship

was struck on the rock, and they saw her inevitably lost, had saved

themselves in their boat, and were landed upon that wild shore

among the savages. Upon this I inquired of him more critically

what was become of them. He assured me they lived still there;

that they had been there about four years; that the savages left

them alone, and gave them victuals to live on. I asked him how it

came to pass they did not kill them and eat them. He said, "No,

they make brother with them;" that is, as I understood him, a

truce; and then he added, "They no eat mans but when make the war

fight;" that is to say, they never eat any men but such as come to

fight with them and are taken in battle.

It was after this some considerable time, that being upon the top

of the hill at the east side of the island, from whence, as I have

said, I had, in a clear day, discovered the main or continent of

America, Friday, the weather being very serene, looks very

earnestly towards the mainland, and, in a kind of surprise, falls a

jumping and dancing, and calls out to me, for I was at some

distance from him. I asked him what was the matter. "Oh, joy!"

says he; "Oh, glad! there see my country, there my nation!" I

observed an extraordinary sense of pleasure appeared in his face,

and his eyes sparkled, and his countenance discovered a strange

eagerness, as if he had a mind to be in his own country again.

This observation of mine put a great many thoughts into me, which

made me at first not so easy about my new man Friday as I was

before; and I made no doubt but that, if Friday could get back to

his own nation again, he would not only forget all his religion but

all his obligation to me, and would be forward enough to give his

countrymen an account of me, and come back, perhaps with a hundred

or two of them, and make a feast upon me, at which he might be as

merry as he used to be with those of his enemies when they were

taken in war. But I wronged the poor honest creature very much,

for which I was very sorry afterwards. However, as my jealousy

increased, and held some weeks, I was a little more circumspect,

and not so familiar and kind to him as before: in which I was

certainly wrong too; the honest, grateful creature having no

thought about it but what consisted with the best principles, both

as a religious Christian and as a grateful friend, as appeared

afterwards to my full satisfaction.

While my jealousy of him lasted, you may be sure I was every day

pumping him to see if he would discover any of the new thoughts

which I suspected were in him; but I found everything he said was

so honest and so innocent, that I could find nothing to nourish my

suspicion; and in spite of all my uneasiness, he made me at last

entirely his own again; nor did he in the least perceive that I was

uneasy, and therefore I could not suspect him of deceit.

One day, walking up the same hill, but the weather being hazy at

sea, so that we could not see the continent, I called to him, and

said, "Friday, do not you wish yourself in your own country, your

own nation?" "Yes," he said, "I be much O glad to be at my own

nation." "What would you do there?" said I. "Would you turn wild

again, eat men's flesh again, and be a savage as you were before?"

He looked full of concern, and shaking his head, said, "No, no,

Friday tell them to live good; tell them to pray God; tell them to

eat corn-bread, cattle flesh, milk; no eat man again." "Why,

then," said I to him, "they will kill you." He looked grave at

that, and then said, "No, no, they no kill me, they willing love

learn." He meant by this, they would be willing to learn. He

added, they learned much of the bearded mans that came in the boat.

Then I asked him if he would go back to them. He smiled at that,

and told me that he could not swim so far. I told him I would make

a canoe for him. He told me he would go if I would go with him.

"I go!" says I; "why, they will eat me if I come there." "No, no,"

says he, "me make they no eat you; me make they much love you." He

meant, he would tell them how I had killed his enemies, and saved

his life, and so he would make them love me. Then he told me, as

well as he could, how kind they were to seventeen white men, or

bearded men, as he called them who came on shore there in distress.

From this time, I confess, I had a mind to venture over, and see if

I could possibly join with those bearded men, who I made no doubt

were Spaniards and Portuguese; not doubting but, if I could, we

might find some method to escape from thence, being upon the

continent, and a good company together, better than I could from an

island forty miles off the shore, alone and without help. So,

after some days, I took Friday to work again by way of discourse,

and told him I would give him a boat to go back to his own nation;

and, accordingly, I carried him to my frigate, which lay on the

other side of the island, and having cleared it of water (for I

always kept it sunk in water), I brought it out, showed it him, and

we both went into it. I found he was a most dexterous fellow at

managing it, and would make it go almost as swift again as I could.

So when he was in, I said to him, "Well, now, Friday, shall we go

to your nation?" He looked very dull at my saying so; which it

seems was because he thought the boat was too small to go so far.

I then told him I had a bigger; so the next day I went to the place

where the first boat lay which I had made, but which I could not

get into the water. He said that was big enough; but then, as I

had taken no care of it, and it had lain two or three and twenty

years there, the sun had so split and dried it, that it was rotten.

Friday told me such a boat would do very well, and would carry

"much enough vittle, drink, bread;" this was his way of talking.

CHAPTER XVI - RESCUE OF PRISONERS FROM CANNIBALS

UPON the whole, I was by this time so fixed upon my design of going

over with him to the continent that I told him we would go and make

one as big as that, and he should go home in it. He answered not

one word, but looked very grave and sad. I asked him what was the

matter with him. He asked me again, "Why you angry mad with

Friday? - what me done?" I asked him what he meant. I told him I

was not angry with him at all. "No angry!" says he, repeating the

words several times; "why send Friday home away to my nation?"

"Why," says I, "Friday, did not you say you wished you were there?"

"Yes, yes," says he, "wish we both there; no wish Friday there, no

master there." In a word, he would not think of going there

without me. "I go there, Friday?" says I; "what shall I do there?"

He turned very quick upon me at this. "You do great deal much

good," says he; "you teach wild mans be good, sober, tame mans; you

tell them know God, pray God, and live new life." "Alas, Friday!"

says I, "thou knowest not what thou sayest; I am but an ignorant

man myself." "Yes, yes," says he, "you teachee me good, you

teachee them good." "No, no, Friday," says I, "you shall go

without me; leave me here to live by myself, as I did before." He

looked confused again at that word; and running to one of the

hatchets which he used to wear, he takes it up hastily, and gives

it to me. "What must I do with this?" says I to him. "You take

kill Friday," says he. "What must kill you for?" said I again. He

returns very quick - "What you send Friday away for? Take kill

Friday, no send Friday away." This he spoke so earnestly that I

saw tears stand in his eyes. In a word, I so plainly discovered

the utmost affection in him to me, and a firm resolution in him,

that I told him then and often after, that I would never send him

away from me if he was willing to stay with me.

Upon the whole, as I found by all his discourse a settled affection

to me, and that nothing could part him from me, so I found all the

foundation of his desire to go to his own country was laid in his

ardent affection to the people, and his hopes of my doing them

good; a thing which, as I had no notion of myself, so I had not the

least thought or intention, or desire of undertaking it. But still

I found a strong inclination to attempting my escape, founded on

the supposition gathered from the discourse, that there were

seventeen bearded men there; and therefore, without any more delay,

I went to work with Friday to find out a great tree proper to fell,

and make a large periagua, or canoe, to undertake the voyage.

There were trees enough in the island to have built a little fleet,

not of periaguas or canoes, but even of good, large vessels; but

the main thing I looked at was, to get one so near the water that

we might launch it when it was made, to avoid the mistake I

committed at first. At last Friday pitched upon a tree; for I

found he knew much better than I what kind of wood was fittest for

it; nor can I tell to this day what wood to call the tree we cut

down, except that it was very like the tree we call fustic, or

between that and the Nicaragua wood, for it was much of the same

colour and smell. Friday wished to burn the hollow or cavity of

this tree out, to make it for a boat, but I showed him how to cut

it with tools; which, after I had showed him how to use, he did

very handily; and in about a month's hard labour we finished it and

made it very handsome; especially when, with our axes, which I

showed him how to handle, we cut and hewed the outside into the

true shape of a boat. After this, however, it cost us near a

fortnight's time to get her along, as it were inch by inch, upon

great rollers into the water; but when she was in, she would have

carried twenty men with great ease.

When she was in the water, though she was so big, it amazed me to

see with what dexterity and how swift my man Friday could manage

her, turn her, and paddle her along. So I asked him if he would,

and if we might venture over in her. "Yes," he said, "we venture

over in her very well, though great blow wind." However I had a

further design that he knew nothing of, and that was, to make a

mast and a sail, and to fit her with an anchor and cable. As to a

mast, that was easy enough to get; so I pitched upon a straight

young cedar-tree, which I found near the place, and which there

were great plenty of in the island, and I set Friday to work to cut

it down, and gave him directions how to shape and order it. But as

to the sail, that was my particular care. I knew I had old sails,

or rather pieces of old sails, enough; but as I had had them now

six-and-twenty years by me, and had not been very careful to

preserve them, not imagining that I should ever have this kind of

use for them, I did not doubt but they were all rotten; and,

indeed, most of them were so. However, I found two pieces which

appeared pretty good, and with these I went to work; and with a

great deal of pains, and awkward stitching, you may be sure, for

want of needles, I at length made a three-cornered ugly thing, like

what we call in England a shoulder-of-mutton sail, to go with a

boom at bottom, and a little short sprit at the top, such as

usually our ships' long-boats sail with, and such as I best knew

how to manage, as it was such a one as I had to the boat in which I

made my escape from Barbary, as related in the first part of my

story.

I was near two months performing this last work, viz. rigging and

fitting my masts and sails; for I finished them very complete,

making a small stay, and a sail, or foresail, to it, to assist if

we should turn to windward; and, what was more than all, I fixed a

rudder to the stern of her to steer with. I was but a bungling

shipwright, yet as I knew the usefulness and even necessity of such

a thing, I applied myself with so much pains to do it, that at last

I brought it to pass; though, considering the many dull

contrivances I had for it that failed, I think it cost me almost as

much labour as making the boat.

After all this was done, I had my man Friday to teach as to what

belonged to the navigation of my boat; though he knew very well how

to paddle a canoe, he knew nothing of what belonged to a sail and a

rudder; and was the most amazed when he saw me work the boat to and

again in the sea by the rudder, and how the sail jibed, and filled

this way or that way as the course we sailed changed; I say when he

saw this he stood like one astonished and amazed. However, with a

little use, I made all these things familiar to him, and he became

an expert sailor, except that of the compass I could make him

understand very little. On the other hand, as there was very

little cloudy weather, and seldom or never any fogs in those parts,

there was the less occasion for a compass, seeing the stars were

always to be seen by night, and the shore by day, except in the

rainy seasons, and then nobody cared to stir abroad either by land

or sea.

I was now entered on the seven-and-twentieth year of my captivity

in this place; though the three last years that I had this creature

with me ought rather to be left out of the account, my habitation

being quite of another kind than in all the rest of the time. I

kept the anniversary of my landing here with the same thankfulness

to God for His mercies as at first: and if I had such cause of

acknowledgment at first, I had much more so now, having such

additional testimonies of the care of Providence over me, and the

great hopes I had of being effectually and speedily delivered; for

I had an invincible impression upon my thoughts that my deliverance

was at hand, and that I should not be another year in this place.

I went on, however, with my husbandry; digging, planting, and

fencing as usual. I gathered and cured my grapes, and did every

necessary thing as before.

The rainy season was in the meantime upon me, when I kept more

within doors than at other times. We had stowed our new vessel as

secure as we could, bringing her up into the creek, where, as I

said in the beginning, I landed my rafts from the ship; and hauling

her up to the shore at high-water mark, I made my man Friday dig a

little dock, just big enough to hold her, and just deep enough to

give her water enough to float in; and then, when the tide was out,

we made a strong dam across the end of it, to keep the water out;

and so she lay, dry as to the tide from the sea: and to keep the

rain off we laid a great many boughs of trees, so thick that she

was as well thatched as a house; and thus we waited for the months

of November and December, in which I designed to make my adventure.

When the settled season began to come in, as the thought of my

design returned with the fair weather, I was preparing daily for

the voyage. And the first thing I did was to lay by a certain

quantity of provisions, being the stores for our voyage; and

intended in a week or a fortnight's time to open the dock, and

launch out our boat. I was busy one morning upon something of this

kind, when I called to Friday, and bid him to go to the sea-shore

and see if he could find a turtle or a tortoise, a thing which we

generally got once a week, for the sake of the eggs as well as the

flesh. Friday had not been long gone when he came running back,

and flew over my outer wall or fence, like one that felt not the

ground or the steps he set his foot on; and before I had time to

speak to him he cries out to me, "O master! O master! O sorrow! O

bad!" - "What's the matter, Friday?" says I. "O yonder there,"

says he, "one, two, three canoes; one, two, three!" By this way of

speaking I concluded there were six; but on inquiry I found there

were but three. "Well, Friday," says I, "do not be frightened."

So I heartened him up as well as I could. However, I saw the poor

fellow was most terribly scared, for nothing ran in his head but

that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in pieces

and eat him; and the poor fellow trembled so that I scarcely knew

what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told

him I was in as much danger as he, and that they would eat me as

well as him. "But," says I, "Friday, we must resolve to fight

them. Can you fight, Friday?" "Me shoot," says he, "but there

come many great number." "No matter for that," said I again; "our

guns will fright them that we do not kill." So I asked him

whether, if I resolved to defend him, he would defend me, and stand

by me, and do just as I bid him. He said, "Me die when you bid

die, master." So I went and fetched a good dram of rum and gave

him; for I had been so good a husband of my rum that I had a great

deal left. When we had drunk it, I made him take the two fowling-

pieces, which we always carried, and loaded them with large swan-

shot, as big as small pistol-bullets. Then I took four muskets,

and loaded them with two slugs and five small bullets each; and my

two pistols I loaded with a brace of bullets each. I hung my great

sword, as usual, naked by my side, and gave Friday his hatchet.

When I had thus prepared myself, I took my perspective glass, and

went up to the side of the hill, to see what I could discover; and

I found quickly by my glass that there were one-and-twenty savages,

three prisoners, and three canoes; and that their whole business

seemed to be the triumphant banquet upon these three human bodies:

a barbarous feast, indeed! but nothing more than, as I had

observed, was usual with them. I observed also that they had

landed, not where they had done when Friday made his escape, but

nearer to my creek, where the shore was low, and where a thick wood

came almost close down to the sea. This, with the abhorrence of

the inhuman errand these wretches came about, filled me with such

indignation that I came down again to Friday, and told him I was

resolved to go down to them and kill them all; and asked him if he

would stand by me. He had now got over his fright, and his spirits

being a little raised with the dram I had given him, he was very

cheerful, and told me, as before, he would die when I bid die.

In this fit of fury I divided the arms which I had charged, as

before, between us; I gave Friday one pistol to stick in his

girdle, and three guns upon his shoulder, and I took one pistol and

the other three guns myself; and in this posture we marched out. I

took a small bottle of rum in my pocket, and gave Friday a large

bag with more powder and bullets; and as to orders, I charged him

to keep close behind me, and not to stir, or shoot, or do anything

till I bid him, and in the meantime not to speak a word. In this

posture I fetched a compass to my right hand of near a mile, as

well to get over the creek as to get into the wood, so that I could

come within shot of them before I should be discovered, which I had

seen by my glass it was easy to do.

While I was making this march, my former thoughts returning, I

began to abate my resolution: I do not mean that I entertained any

fear of their number, for as they were naked, unarmed wretches, it

is certain I was superior to them - nay, though I had been alone.

But it occurred to my thoughts, what call, what occasion, much less

what necessity I was in to go and dip my hands in blood, to attack

people who had neither done or intended me any wrong? who, as to

me, were innocent, and whose barbarous customs were their own

disaster, being in them a token, indeed, of God's having left them,

with the other nations of that part of the world, to such

stupidity, and to such inhuman courses, but did not call me to take

upon me to be a judge of their actions, much less an executioner of

His justice - that whenever He thought fit He would take the cause

into His own hands, and by national vengeance punish them as a

people for national crimes, but that, in the meantime, it was none

of my business - that it was true Friday might justify it, because

he was a declared enemy and in a state of war with those very

particular people, and it was lawful for him to attack them - but I

could not say the same with regard to myself. These things were so

warmly pressed upon my thoughts all the way as I went, that I

resolved I would only go and place myself near them that I might

observe their barbarous feast, and that I would act then as God

should direct; but that unless something offered that was more a

call to me than yet I knew of, I would not meddle with them.

With this resolution I entered the wood, and, with all possible

wariness and silence, Friday following close at my heels, I marched

till I came to the skirts of the wood on the side which was next to

them, only that one corner of the wood lay between me and them.

Here I called softly to Friday, and showing him a great tree which

was just at the corner of the wood, I bade him go to the tree, and

bring me word if he could see there plainly what they were doing.

He did so, and came immediately back to me, and told me they might

be plainly viewed there - that they were all about their fire,

eating the flesh of one of their prisoners, and that another lay

bound upon the sand a little from them, whom he said they would

kill next; and this fired the very soul within me. He told me it

was not one of their nation, but one of the bearded men he had told

me of, that came to their country in the boat. I was filled with

horror at the very naming of the white bearded man; and going to

the tree, I saw plainly by my glass a white man, who lay upon the

beach of the sea with his hands and his feet tied with flags, or

things like rushes, and that he was an European, and had clothes

on.

There was another tree and a little thicket beyond it, about fifty

yards nearer to them than the place where I was, which, by going a

little way about, I saw I might come at undiscovered, and that then

I should be within half a shot of them; so I withheld my passion,

though I was indeed enraged to the highest degree; and going back

about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all the

way till I came to the other tree, and then came to a little rising

ground, which gave me a full view of them at the distance of about

eighty yards.

I had now not a moment to lose, for nineteen of the dreadful

wretches sat upon the ground, all close huddled together, and had

just sent the other two to butcher the poor Christian, and bring

him perhaps limb by limb to their fire, and they were stooping down

to untie the bands at his feet. I turned to Friday. "Now,

Friday," said I, "do as I bid thee." Friday said he would. "Then,

Friday," says I, "do exactly as you see me do; fail in nothing."

So I set down one of the muskets and the fowling-piece upon the

ground, and Friday did the like by his, and with the other musket I

took my aim at the savages, bidding him to do the like; then asking

him if he was ready, he said, "Yes." "Then fire at them," said I;

and at the same moment I fired also.

Friday took his aim so much better than I, that on the side that he

shot he killed two of them, and wounded three more; and on my side

I killed one, and wounded two. They were, you may be sure, in a

dreadful consternation: and all of them that were not hurt jumped

upon their feet, but did not immediately know which way to run, or

which way to look, for they knew not from whence their destruction

came. Friday kept his eyes close upon me, that, as I had bid him,

he might observe what I did; so, as soon as the first shot was

made, I threw down the piece, and took up the fowling-piece, and

Friday did the like; he saw me cock and present; he did the same

again. "Are you ready, Friday?" said I. "Yes," says he. "Let

fly, then," says I, "in the name of God!" and with that I fired

again among the amazed wretches, and so did Friday; and as our

pieces were now loaded with what I call swan-shot, or small pistol-

bullets, we found only two drop; but so many were wounded that they

ran about yelling and screaming like mad creatures, all bloody, and

most of them miserably wounded; whereof three more fell quickly

after, though not quite dead.

"Now, Friday," says I, laying down the discharged pieces, and

taking up the musket which was yet loaded, "follow me," which he

did with a great deal of courage; upon which I rushed out of the

wood and showed myself, and Friday close at my foot. As soon as I

perceived they saw me, I shouted as loud as I could, and bade

Friday do so too, and running as fast as I could, which, by the

way, was not very fast, being loaded with arms as I was, I made

directly towards the poor victim, who was, as I said, lying upon

the beach or shore, between the place where they sat and the sea.

The two butchers who were just going to work with him had left him

at the surprise of our first fire, and fled in a terrible fright to

the seaside, and had jumped into a canoe, and three more of the

rest made the same way. I turned to Friday, and bade him step

forwards and fire at them; he understood me immediately, and

running about forty yards, to be nearer them, he shot at them; and

I thought he had killed them all, for I saw them all fall of a heap

into the boat, though I saw two of them up again quickly; however,

he killed two of them, and wounded the third, so that he lay down

in the bottom of the boat as if he had been dead.

While my man Friday fired at them, I pulled out my knife and cut

the flags that bound the poor victim; and loosing his hands and

feet, I lifted him up, and asked him in the Portuguese tongue what

he was. He answered in Latin, Christianus; but was so weak and

faint that he could scarce stand or speak. I took my bottle out of

my pocket and gave it him, making signs that he should drink, which

he did; and I gave him a piece of bread, which he ate. Then I

asked him what countryman he was: and he said, Espagniole; and

being a little recovered, let me know, by all the signs he could

possibly make, how much he was in my debt for his deliverance.

"Seignior," said I, with as much Spanish as I could make up, "we

will talk afterwards, but we must fight now: if you have any

strength left, take this pistol and sword, and lay about you." He

took them very thankfully; and no sooner had he the arms in his

hands, but, as if they had put new vigour into him, he flew upon

his murderers like a fury, and had cut two of them in pieces in an

instant; for the truth is, as the whole was a surprise to them, so

the poor creatures were so much frightened with the noise of our

pieces that they fell down for mere amazement and fear, and had no

more power to attempt their own escape than their flesh had to

resist our shot; and that was the case of those five that Friday

shot at in the boat; for as three of them fell with the hurt they

received, so the other two fell with the fright.

I kept my piece in my hand still without firing, being willing to

keep my charge ready, because I had given the Spaniard my pistol

and sword: so I called to Friday, and bade him run up to the tree

from whence we first fired, and fetch the arms which lay there that

had been discharged, which he did with great swiftness; and then

giving him my musket, I sat down myself to load all the rest again,

and bade them come to me when they wanted. While I was loading

these pieces, there happened a fierce engagement between the

Spaniard and one of the savages, who made at him with one of their

great wooden swords, the weapon that was to have killed him before,

if I had not prevented it. The Spaniard, who was as bold and brave

as could be imagined, though weak, had fought the Indian a good

while, and had cut two great wounds on his head; but the savage

being a stout, lusty fellow, closing in with him, had thrown him

down, being faint, and was wringing my sword out of his hand; when

the Spaniard, though undermost, wisely quitting the sword, drew the

pistol from his girdle, shot the savage through the body, and

killed him upon the spot, before I, who was running to help him,

could come near him.

Friday, being now left to his liberty, pursued the flying wretches,

with no weapon in his hand but his hatchet: and with that he

despatched those three who as I said before, were wounded at first,

and fallen, and all the rest he could come up with: and the

Spaniard coming to me for a gun, I gave him one of the fowling-

pieces, with which he pursued two of the savages, and wounded them

both; but as he was not able to run, they both got from him into

the wood, where Friday pursued them, and killed one of them, but

the other was too nimble for him; and though he was wounded, yet

had plunged himself into the sea, and swam with all his might off

to those two who were left in the canoe; which three in the canoe,

with one wounded, that we knew not whether he died or no, were all

that escaped our hands of one-and-twenty. The account of the whole

is as follows: Three killed at our first shot from the tree; two

killed at the next shot; two killed by Friday in the boat; two

killed by Friday of those at first wounded; one killed by Friday in

the wood; three killed by the Spaniard; four killed, being found

dropped here and there, of the wounds, or killed by Friday in his

chase of them; four escaped in the boat, whereof one wounded, if

not dead - twenty-one in all.

Those that were in the canoe worked hard to get out of gun-shot,

and though Friday made two or three shots at them, I did not find

that he hit any of them. Friday would fain have had me take one of

their canoes, and pursue them; and indeed I was very anxious about

their escape, lest, carrying the news home to their people, they

should come back perhaps with two or three hundred of the canoes

and devour us by mere multitude; so I consented to pursue them by

sea, and running to one of their canoes, I jumped in and bade

Friday follow me: but when I was in the canoe I was surprised to

find another poor creature lie there, bound hand and foot, as the

Spaniard was, for the slaughter, and almost dead with fear, not

knowing what was the matter; for he had not been able to look up

over the side of the boat, he was tied so hard neck and heels, and

had been tied so long that he had really but little life in him.

I immediately cut the twisted flags or rushes which they had bound

him with, and would have helped him up; but he could not stand or

speak, but groaned most piteously, believing, it seems, still, that

he was only unbound in order to be killed. When Friday came to him

I bade him speak to him, and tell him of his deliverance; and

pulling out my bottle, made him give the poor wretch a dram, which,

with the news of his being delivered, revived him, and he sat up in

the boat. But when Friday came to hear him speak, and look in his

face, it would have moved any one to tears to have seen how Friday

kissed him, embraced him, hugged him, cried, laughed, hallooed,

jumped about, danced, sang; then cried again, wrung his hands, beat

his own face and head; and then sang and jumped about again like a

distracted creature. It was a good while before I could make him

speak to me or tell me what was the matter; but when he came a

little to himself he told me that it was his father.

It is not easy for me to express how it moved me to see what

ecstasy and filial affection had worked in this poor savage at the

sight of his father, and of his being delivered from death; nor

indeed can I describe half the extravagances of his affection after

this: for he went into the boat and out of the boat a great many

times: when he went in to him he would sit down by him, open his

breast, and hold his father's head close to his bosom for many

minutes together, to nourish it; then he took his arms and ankles,

which were numbed and stiff with the binding, and chafed and rubbed

them with his hands; and I, perceiving what the case was, gave him

some rum out of my bottle to rub them with, which did them a great

deal of good.

This affair put an end to our pursuit of the canoe with the other

savages, who were now almost out of sight; and it was happy for us

that we did not, for it blew so hard within two hours after, and

before they could be got a quarter of their way, and continued

blowing so hard all night, and that from the north-west, which was

against them, that I could not suppose their boat could live, or

that they ever reached their own coast.

But to return to Friday; he was so busy about his father that I

could not find in my heart to take him off for some time; but after

I thought he could leave him a little, I called him to me, and he

came jumping and laughing, and pleased to the highest extreme: then

I asked him if he had given his father any bread. He shook his

head, and said, "None; ugly dog eat all up self." I then gave him

a cake of bread out of a little pouch I carried on purpose; I also

gave him a dram for himself; but he would not taste it, but carried

it to his father. I had in my pocket two or three bunches of

raisins, so I gave him a handful of them for his father. He had no

sooner given his father these raisins but I saw him come out of the

boat, and run away as if he had been bewitched, for he was the

swiftest fellow on his feet that ever I saw: I say, he ran at such

a rate that he was out of sight, as it were, in an instant; and

though I called, and hallooed out too after him, it was all one -

away he went; and in a quarter of an hour I saw him come back

again, though not so fast as he went; and as he came nearer I found

his pace slacker, because he had something in his hand. When he

came up to me I found he had been quite home for an earthen jug or

pot, to bring his father some fresh water, and that he had got two

more cakes or loaves of bread: the bread he gave me, but the water

he carried to his father; however, as I was very thirsty too, I

took a little of it. The water revived his father more than all

the rum or spirits I had given him, for he was fainting with

thirst.

When his father had drunk, I called to him to know if there was any

water left. He said, "Yes"; and I bade him give it to the poor

Spaniard, who was in as much want of it as his father; and I sent

one of the cakes that Friday brought to the Spaniard too, who was

indeed very weak, and was reposing himself upon a green place under

the shade of a tree; and whose limbs were also very stiff, and very

much swelled with the rude bandage he had been tied with. When I

saw that upon Friday's coming to him with the water he sat up and

drank, and took the bread and began to eat, I went to him and gave

him a handful of raisins. He looked up in my face with all the

tokens of gratitude and thankfulness that could appear in any

countenance; but was so weak, notwithstanding he had so exerted

himself in the fight, that he could not stand up upon his feet - he

tried to do it two or three times, but was really not able, his

ankles were so swelled and so painful to him; so I bade him sit

still, and caused Friday to rub his ankles, and bathe them with

rum, as he had done his father's.

I observed the poor affectionate creature, every two minutes, or

perhaps less, all the while he was here, turn his head about to see

if his father was in the same place and posture as he left him

sitting; and at last he found he was not to be seen; at which he

started up, and, without speaking a word, flew with that swiftness

to him that one could scarce perceive his feet to touch the ground

as he went; but when he came, he only found he had laid himself

down to ease his limbs, so Friday came back to me presently; and

then I spoke to the Spaniard to let Friday help him up if he could,

and lead him to the boat, and then he should carry him to our

dwelling, where I would take care of him. But Friday, a lusty,

strong fellow, took the Spaniard upon his back, and carried him

away to the boat, and set him down softly upon the side or gunnel

of the canoe, with his feet in the inside of it; and then lifting

him quite in, he set him close to his father; and presently

stepping out again, launched the boat off, and paddled it along the

shore faster than I could walk, though the wind blew pretty hard

too; so he brought them both safe into our creek, and leaving them

in the boat, ran away to fetch the other canoe. As he passed me I

spoke to him, and asked him whither he went. He told me, "Go fetch

more boat;" so away he went like the wind, for sure never man or

horse ran like him; and he had the other canoe in the creek almost

as soon as I got to it by land; so he wafted me over, and then went

to help our new guests out of the boat, which he did; but they were

neither of them able to walk; so that poor Friday knew not what to

do.

To remedy this, I went to work in my thought, and calling to Friday

to bid them sit down on the bank while he came to me, I soon made a

kind of hand-barrow to lay them on, and Friday and I carried them

both up together upon it between us.

But when we got them to the outside of our wall, or fortification,

we were at a worse loss than before, for it was impossible to get

them over, and I was resolved not to break it down; so I set to

work again, and Friday and I, in about two hours' time, made a very

handsome tent, covered with old sails, and above that with boughs

of trees, being in the space without our outward fence and between

that and the grove of young wood which I had planted; and here we

made them two beds of such things as I had - viz. of good rice-

straw, with blankets laid upon it to lie on, and another to cover

them, on each bed.

My island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich in

subjects; and it was a merry reflection, which I frequently made,

how like a king I looked. First of all, the whole country was my

own property, so that I had an undoubted right of dominion.

Secondly, my people were perfectly subjected - I was absolutely

lord and lawgiver - they all owed their lives to me, and were ready

to lay down their lives, if there had been occasion for it, for me.

It was remarkable, too, I had but three subjects, and they were of

three different religions - my man Friday was a Protestant, his

father was a Pagan and a cannibal, and the Spaniard was a Papist.

However, I allowed liberty of conscience throughout my dominions.

But this is by the way.

As soon as I had secured my two weak, rescued prisoners, and given

them shelter, and a place to rest them upon, I began to think of

making some provision for them; and the first thing I did, I

ordered Friday to take a yearling goat, betwixt a kid and a goat,

out of my particular flock, to be killed; when I cut off the

hinder-quarter, and chopping it into small pieces, I set Friday to

work to boiling and stewing, and made them a very good dish, I

assure you, of flesh and broth; and as I cooked it without doors,

for I made no fire within my inner wall, so I carried it all into

the new tent, and having set a table there for them, I sat down,

and ate my own dinner also with them, and, as well as I could,

cheered them and encouraged them. Friday was my interpreter,

especially to his father, and, indeed, to the Spaniard too; for the

Spaniard spoke the language of the savages pretty well.

After we had dined, or rather supped, I ordered Friday to take one

of the canoes, and go and fetch our muskets and other firearms,

which, for want of time, we had left upon the place of battle; and

the next day I ordered him to go and bury the dead bodies of the

savages, which lay open to the sun, and would presently be

offensive. I also ordered him to bury the horrid remains of their

barbarous feast, which I could not think of doing myself; nay, I

could not bear to see them if I went that way; all which he

punctually performed, and effaced the very appearance of the

savages being there; so that when I went again, I could scarce know

where it was, otherwise than by the corner of the wood pointing to

the place.

I then began to enter into a little conversation with my two new

subjects; and, first, I set Friday to inquire of his father what he

thought of the escape of the savages in that canoe, and whether we

might expect a return of them, with a power too great for us to

resist. His first opinion was, that the savages in the boat never

could live out the storm which blew that night they went off, but

must of necessity be drowned, or driven south to those other

shores, where they were as sure to be devoured as they were to be

drowned if they were cast away; but, as to what they would do if

they came safe on shore, he said he knew not; but it was his

opinion that they were so dreadfully frightened with the manner of

their being attacked, the noise, and the fire, that he believed

they would tell the people they were all killed by thunder and

lightning, not by the hand of man; and that the two which appeared

- viz. Friday and I - were two heavenly spirits, or furies, come

down to destroy them, and not men with weapons. This, he said, he

knew; because he heard them all cry out so, in their language, one

to another; for it was impossible for them to conceive that a man

could dart fire, and speak thunder, and kill at a distance, without

lifting up the hand, as was done now: and this old savage was in

the right; for, as I understood since, by other hands, the savages

never attempted to go over to the island afterwards, they were so

terrified with the accounts given by those four men (for it seems

they did escape the sea), that they believed whoever went to that

enchanted island would be destroyed with fire from the gods. This,

however, I knew not; and therefore was under continual

apprehensions for a good while, and kept always upon my guard, with

all my army: for, as there were now four of us, I would have

ventured upon a hundred of them, fairly in the open field, at any

time.

CHAPTER XVII - VISIT OF MUTINEERS

IN a little time, however, no more canoes appearing, the fear of

their coming wore off; and I began to take my former thoughts of a

voyage to the main into consideration; being likewise assured by

Friday's father that I might depend upon good usage from their

nation, on his account, if I would go. But my thoughts were a

little suspended when I had a serious discourse with the Spaniard,

and when I understood that there were sixteen more of his

countrymen and Portuguese, who having been cast away and made their

escape to that side, lived there at peace, indeed, with the

savages, but were very sore put to it for necessaries, and, indeed,

for life. I asked him all the particulars of their voyage, and

found they were a Spanish ship, bound from the Rio de la Plata to

the Havanna, being directed to leave their loading there, which was

chiefly hides and silver, and to bring back what European goods

they could meet with there; that they had five Portuguese seamen on

board, whom they took out of another wreck; that five of their own

men were drowned when first the ship was lost, and that these

escaped through infinite dangers and hazards, and arrived, almost

starved, on the cannibal coast, where they expected to have been

devoured every moment. He told me they had some arms with them,

but they were perfectly useless, for that they had neither powder

nor ball, the washing of the sea having spoiled all their powder

but a little, which they used at their first landing to provide

themselves with some food.

I asked him what he thought would become of them there, and if they

had formed any design of making their escape. He said they had

many consultations about it; but that having neither vessel nor

tools to build one, nor provisions of any kind, their councils

always ended in tears and despair. I asked him how he thought they

would receive a proposal from me, which might tend towards an

escape; and whether, if they were all here, it might not be done.

I told him with freedom, I feared mostly their treachery and ill-

usage of me, if I put my life in their hands; for that gratitude

was no inherent virtue in the nature of man, nor did men always

square their dealings by the obligations they had received so much

as they did by the advantages they expected. I told him it would

be very hard that I should be made the instrument of their

deliverance, and that they should afterwards make me their prisoner

in New Spain, where an Englishman was certain to be made a

sacrifice, what necessity or what accident soever brought him

thither; and that I had rather be delivered up to the savages, and

be devoured alive, than fall into the merciless claws of the

priests, and be carried into the Inquisition. I added that,

otherwise, I was persuaded, if they were all here, we might, with

so many hands, build a barque large enough to carry us all away,

either to the Brazils southward, or to the islands or Spanish coast

northward; but that if, in requital, they should, when I had put

weapons into their hands, carry me by force among their own people,

I might be ill-used for my kindness to them, and make my case worse

than it was before.

He answered, with a great deal of candour and ingenuousness, that

their condition was so miserable, and that they were so sensible of

it, that he believed they would abhor the thought of using any man

unkindly that should contribute to their deliverance; and that, if

I pleased, he would go to them with the old man, and discourse with

them about it, and return again and bring me their answer; that he

would make conditions with them upon their solemn oath, that they

should be absolutely under my direction as their commander and

captain; and they should swear upon the holy sacraments and gospel

to be true to me, and go to such Christian country as I should

agree to, and no other; and to be directed wholly and absolutely by

my orders till they were landed safely in such country as I

intended, and that he would bring a contract from them, under their

hands, for that purpose. Then he told me he would first swear to

me himself that he would never stir from me as long as he lived

till I gave him orders; and that he would take my side to the last

drop of his blood, if there should happen the least breach of faith

among his countrymen. He told me they were all of them very civil,

honest men, and they were under the greatest distress imaginable,

having neither weapons nor clothes, nor any food, but at the mercy

and discretion of the savages; out of all hopes of ever returning

to their own country; and that he was sure, if I would undertake

their relief, they would live and die by me.

Upon these assurances, I resolved to venture to relieve them, if

possible, and to send the old savage and this Spaniard over to them

to treat. But when we had got all things in readiness to go, the

Spaniard himself started an objection, which had so much prudence

in it on one hand, and so much sincerity on the other hand, that I

could not but be very well satisfied in it; and, by his advice, put

off the deliverance of his comrades for at least half a year. The

case was thus: he had been with us now about a month, during which

time I had let him see in what manner I had provided, with the

assistance of Providence, for my support; and he saw evidently what

stock of corn and rice I had laid up; which, though it was more

than sufficient for myself, yet it was not sufficient, without good

husbandry, for my family, now it was increased to four; but much

less would it be sufficient if his countrymen, who were, as he

said, sixteen, still alive, should come over; and least of all

would it be sufficient to victual our vessel, if we should build

one, for a voyage to any of the Christian colonies of America; so

he told me he thought it would be more advisable to let him and the

other two dig and cultivate some more land, as much as I could

spare seed to sow, and that we should wait another harvest, that we

might have a supply of corn for his countrymen, when they should

come; for want might be a temptation to them to disagree, or not to

think themselves delivered, otherwise than out of one difficulty

into another. "You know," says he, "the children of Israel, though

they rejoiced at first for their being delivered out of Egypt, yet

rebelled even against God Himself, that delivered them, when they

came to want bread in the wilderness."

His caution was so seasonable, and his advice so good, that I could

not but be very well pleased with his proposal, as well as I was

satisfied with his fidelity; so we fell to digging, all four of us,

as well as the wooden tools we were furnished with permitted; and

in about a month's time, by the end of which it was seed-time, we

had got as much land cured and trimmed up as we sowed two-and-

twenty bushels of barley on, and sixteen jars of rice, which was,

in short, all the seed we had to spare: indeed, we left ourselves

barely sufficient, for our own food for the six months that we had

to expect our crop; that is to say reckoning from the time we set

our seed aside for sowing; for it is not to be supposed it is six

months in the ground in that country.

Having now society enough, and our numbers being sufficient to put

us out of fear of the savages, if they had come, unless their

number had been very great, we went freely all over the island,

whenever we found occasion; and as we had our escape or deliverance

upon our thoughts, it was impossible, at least for me, to have the

means of it out of mine. For this purpose I marked out several

trees, which I thought fit for our work, and I set Friday and his

father to cut them down; and then I caused the Spaniard, to whom I

imparted my thoughts on that affair, to oversee and direct their

work. I showed them with what indefatigable pains I had hewed a

large tree into single planks, and I caused them to do the like,

till they made about a dozen large planks, of good oak, near two

feet broad, thirty-five feet long, and from two inches to four

inches thick: what prodigious labour it took up any one may

imagine.

At the same time I contrived to increase my little flock of tame

goats as much as I could; and for this purpose I made Friday and

the Spaniard go out one day, and myself with Friday the next day

(for we took our turns), and by this means we got about twenty

young kids to breed up with the rest; for whenever we shot the dam,

we saved the kids, and added them to our flock. But above all, the

season for curing the grapes coming on, I caused such a prodigious

quantity to be hung up in the sun, that, I believe, had we been at

Alicant, where the raisins of the sun are cured, we could have

filled sixty or eighty barrels; and these, with our bread, formed a

great part of our food - very good living too, I assure you, for

they are exceedingly nourishing.

It was now harvest, and our crop in good order: it was not the most

plentiful increase I had seen in the island, but, however, it was

enough to answer our end; for from twenty-two bushels of barley we

brought in and thrashed out above two hundred and twenty bushels;

and the like in proportion of the rice; which was store enough for

our food to the next harvest, though all the sixteen Spaniards had

been on shore with me; or, if we had been ready for a voyage, it

would very plentifully have victualled our ship to have carried us

to any part of the world; that is to say, any part of America.

When we had thus housed and secured our magazine of corn, we fell

to work to make more wicker-ware, viz. great baskets, in which we

kept it; and the Spaniard was very handy and dexterous at this

part, and often blamed me that I did not make some things for

defence of this kind of work; but I saw no need of it.

And now, having a full supply of food for all the guests I

expected, I gave the Spaniard leave to go over to the main, to see

what he could do with those he had left behind him there. I gave

him a strict charge not to bring any man who would not first swear

in the presence of himself and the old savage that he would in no

way injure, fight with, or attack the person he should find in the

island, who was so kind as to send for them in order to their

deliverance; but that they would stand by him and defend him

against all such attempts, and wherever they went would be entirely

under and subjected to his command; and that this should be put in

writing, and signed in their hands. How they were to have done

this, when I knew they had neither pen nor ink, was a question

which we never asked. Under these instructions, the Spaniard and

the old savage, the father of Friday, went away in one of the

canoes which they might be said to have come in, or rather were

brought in, when they came as prisoners to be devoured by the

savages. I gave each of them a musket, with a firelock on it, and

about eight charges of powder and ball, charging them to be very

good husbands of both, and not to use either of them but upon

urgent occasions.

This was a cheerful work, being the first measures used by me in

view of my deliverance for now twenty-seven years and some days. I

gave them provisions of bread and of dried grapes, sufficient for

themselves for many days, and sufficient for all the Spaniards -

for about eight days' time; and wishing them a good voyage, I saw

them go, agreeing with them about a signal they should hang out at

their return, by which I should know them again when they came

back, at a distance, before they came on shore. They went away

with a fair gale on the day that the moon was at full, by my

account in the month of October; but as for an exact reckoning of

days, after I had once lost it I could never recover it again; nor

had I kept even the number of years so punctually as to be sure I

was right; though, as it proved when I afterwards examined my

account, I found I had kept a true reckoning of years.

It was no less than eight days I had waited for them, when a

strange and unforeseen accident intervened, of which the like has

not, perhaps, been heard of in history. I was fast asleep in my

hutch one morning, when my man Friday came running in to me, and

called aloud, "Master, master, they are come, they are come!" I

jumped up, and regardless of danger I went, as soon as I could get

my clothes on, through my little grove, which, by the way, was by

this time grown to be a very thick wood; I say, regardless of

danger I went without my arms, which was not my custom to do; but I

was surprised when, turning my eyes to the sea, I presently saw a

boat at about a league and a half distance, standing in for the

shore, with a shoulder-of-mutton sail, as they call it, and the

wind blowing pretty fair to bring them in: also I observed,

presently, that they did not come from that side which the shore

lay on, but from the southernmost end of the island. Upon this I

called Friday in, and bade him lie close, for these were not the

people we looked for, and that we might not know yet whether they

were friends or enemies. In the next place I went in to fetch my

perspective glass to see what I could make of them; and having

taken the ladder out, I climbed up to the top of the hill, as I

used to do when I was apprehensive of anything, and to take my view

the plainer without being discovered. I had scarce set my foot

upon the hill when my eye plainly discovered a ship lying at

anchor, at about two leagues and a half distance from me, SSE., but

not above a league and a half from the shore. By my observation it

appeared plainly to be an English ship, and the boat appeared to be

an English long-boat.

I cannot express the confusion I was in, though the joy of seeing a

ship, and one that I had reason to believe was manned by my own

countrymen, and consequently friends, was such as I cannot

describe; but yet I had some secret doubts hung about me - I cannot

tell from whence they came - bidding me keep upon my guard. In the

first place, it occurred to me to consider what business an English

ship could have in that part of the world, since it was not the way

to or from any part of the world where the English had any traffic;

and I knew there had been no storms to drive them in there in

distress; and that if they were really English it was most probable

that they were here upon no good design; and that I had better

continue as I was than fall into the hands of thieves and

murderers.

Let no man despise the secret hints and notices of danger which

sometimes are given him when he may think there is no possibility

of its being real. That such hints and notices are given us I

believe few that have made any observation of things can deny; that

they are certain discoveries of an invisible world, and a converse

of spirits, we cannot doubt; and if the tendency of them seems to

be to warn us of danger, why should we not suppose they are from

some friendly agent (whether supreme, or inferior and subordinate,

is not the question), and that they are given for our good?

The present question abundantly confirms me in the justice of this

reasoning; for had I not been made cautious by this secret

admonition, come it from whence it will, I had been done

inevitably, and in a far worse condition than before, as you will

see presently. I had not kept myself long in this posture till I

saw the boat draw near the shore, as if they looked for a creek to

thrust in at, for the convenience of landing; however, as they did

not come quite far enough, they did not see the little inlet where

I formerly landed my rafts, but ran their boat on shore upon the

beach, at about half a mile from me, which was very happy for me;

for otherwise they would have landed just at my door, as I may say,

and would soon have beaten me out of my castle, and perhaps have

plundered me of all I had. When they were on shore I was fully

satisfied they were Englishmen, at least most of them; one or two I

thought were Dutch, but it did not prove so; there were in all

eleven men, whereof three of them I found were unarmed and, as I

thought, bound; and when the first four or five of them were jumped

on shore, they took those three out of the boat as prisoners: one

of the three I could perceive using the most passionate gestures of

entreaty, affliction, and despair, even to a kind of extravagance;

the other two, I could perceive, lifted up their hands sometimes,

and appeared concerned indeed, but not to such a degree as the

first. I was perfectly confounded at the sight, and knew not what

the meaning of it should be. Friday called out to me in English,

as well as he could, "O master! you see English mans eat prisoner

as well as savage mans." "Why, Friday," says I, "do you think they

are going to eat them, then?" "Yes," says Friday, "they will eat

them." "No no," says I, "Friday; I am afraid they will murder

them, indeed; but you may be sure they will not eat them."

All this while I had no thought of what the matter really was, but

stood trembling with the horror of the sight, expecting every

moment when the three prisoners should be killed; nay, once I saw

one of the villains lift up his arm with a great cutlass, as the

seamen call it, or sword, to strike one of the poor men; and I

expected to see him fall every moment; at which all the blood in my

body seemed to run chill in my veins. I wished heartily now for

the Spaniard, and the savage that had gone with him, or that I had

any way to have come undiscovered within shot of them, that I might

have secured the three men, for I saw no firearms they had among

them; but it fell out to my mind another way. After I had observed

the outrageous usage of the three men by the insolent seamen, I

observed the fellows run scattering about the island, as if they

wanted to see the country. I observed that the three other men had

liberty to go also where they pleased; but they sat down all three

upon the ground, very pensive, and looked like men in despair.

This put me in mind of the first time when I came on shore, and

began to look about me; how I gave myself over for lost; how wildly

I looked round me; what dreadful apprehensions I had; and how I

lodged in the tree all night for fear of being devoured by wild

beasts. As I knew nothing that night of the supply I was to

receive by the providential driving of the ship nearer the land by

the storms and tide, by which I have since been so long nourished

and supported; so these three poor desolate men knew nothing how

certain of deliverance and supply they were, how near it was to

them, and how effectually and really they were in a condition of

safety, at the same time that they thought themselves lost and

their case desperate. So little do we see before us in the world,

and so much reason have we to depend cheerfully upon the great

Maker of the world, that He does not leave His creatures so

absolutely destitute, but that in the worst circumstances they have

always something to be thankful for, and sometimes are nearer

deliverance than they imagine; nay, are even brought to their

deliverance by the means by which they seem to be brought to their

destruction.

It was just at high-water when these people came on shore; and

while they rambled about to see what kind of a place they were in,

they had carelessly stayed till the tide was spent, and the water

was ebbed considerably away, leaving their boat aground. They had

left two men in the boat, who, as I found afterwards, having drunk

a little too much brandy, fell asleep; however, one of them waking

a little sooner than the other and finding the boat too fast

aground for him to stir it, hallooed out for the rest, who were

straggling about: upon which they all soon came to the boat: but it

was past all their strength to launch her, the boat being very

heavy, and the shore on that side being a soft oozy sand, almost

like a quicksand. In this condition, like true seamen, who are,

perhaps, the least of all mankind given to forethought, they gave

it over, and away they strolled about the country again; and I

heard one of them say aloud to another, calling them off from the

boat, "Why, let her alone, Jack, can't you? she'll float next

tide;" by which I was fully confirmed in the main inquiry of what

countrymen they were. All this while I kept myself very close, not

once daring to stir out of my castle any farther than to my place

of observation near the top of the hill: and very glad I was to

think how well it was fortified. I knew it was no less than ten

hours before the boat could float again, and by that time it would

be dark, and I might be at more liberty to see their motions, and

to hear their discourse, if they had any. In the meantime I fitted

myself up for a battle as before, though with more caution, knowing

I had to do with another kind of enemy than I had at first. I

ordered Friday also, whom I had made an excellent marksman with his

gun, to load himself with arms. I took myself two fowling-pieces,

and I gave him three muskets. My figure, indeed, was very fierce;

I had my formidable goat-skin coat on, with the great cap I have

mentioned, a naked sword by my side, two pistols in my belt, and a

gun upon each shoulder.

It was my design, as I said above, not to have made any attempt

till it was dark; but about two o'clock, being the heat of the day,

I found that they were all gone straggling into the woods, and, as

I thought, laid down to sleep. The three poor distressed men, too

anxious for their condition to get any sleep, had, however, sat

down under the shelter of a great tree, at about a quarter of a

mile from me, and, as I thought, out of sight of any of the rest.

Upon this I resolved to discover myself to them, and learn

something of their condition; immediately I marched as above, my

man Friday at a good distance behind me, as formidable for his arms

as I, but not making quite so staring a spectre-like figure as I

did. I came as near them undiscovered as I could, and then, before

any of them saw me, I called aloud to them in Spanish, "What are

ye, gentlemen?" They started up at the noise, but were ten times

more confounded when they saw me, and the uncouth figure that I

made. They made no answer at all, but I thought I perceived them

just going to fly from me, when I spoke to them in English.

"Gentlemen," said I, "do not be surprised at me; perhaps you may

have a friend near when you did not expect it." "He must be sent

directly from heaven then," said one of them very gravely to me,

and pulling off his hat at the same time to me; "for our condition

is past the help of man." "All help is from heaven, sir," said I,

"but can you put a stranger in the way to help you? for you seem to

be in some great distress. I saw you when you landed; and when you

seemed to make application to the brutes that came with you, I saw

one of them lift up his sword to kill you."

The poor man, with tears running down his face, and trembling,

looking like one astonished, returned, "Am I talking to God or man?

Is it a real man or an angel?" "Be in no fear about that, sir,"

said I; "if God had sent an angel to relieve you, he would have

come better clothed, and armed after another manner than you see

me; pray lay aside your fears; I am a man, an Englishman, and

disposed to assist you; you see I have one servant only; we have

arms and ammunition; tell us freely, can we serve you? What is

your case?" "Our case, sir," said he, "is too long to tell you

while our murderers are so near us; but, in short, sir, I was

commander of that ship - my men have mutinied against me; they have

been hardly prevailed on not to murder me, and, at last, have set

me on shore in this desolate place, with these two men with me -

one my mate, the other a passenger - where we expected to perish,

believing the place to be uninhabited, and know not yet what to

think of it." "Where are these brutes, your enemies?" said I; "do

you know where they are gone? There they lie, sir," said he,

pointing to a thicket of trees; "my heart trembles for fear they

have seen us and heard you speak; if they have, they will certainly

murder us all." "Have they any firearms?" said I. He answered,

"They had only two pieces, one of which they left in the boat."

"Well, then," said I, "leave the rest to me; I see they are all

asleep; it is an easy thing to kill them all; but shall we rather

take them prisoners?" He told me there were two desperate villains

among them that it was scarce safe to show any mercy to; but if

they were secured, he believed all the rest would return to their

duty. I asked him which they were. He told me he could not at

that distance distinguish them, but he would obey my orders in

anything I would direct. "Well," says I, "let us retreat out of

their view or hearing, lest they awake, and we will resolve

further." So they willingly went back with me, till the woods

covered us from them.

"Look you, sir," said I, "if I venture upon your deliverance, are

you willing to make two conditions with me?" He anticipated my

proposals by telling me that both he and the ship, if recovered,

should be wholly directed and commanded by me in everything; and if

the ship was not recovered, he would live and die with me in what

part of the world soever I would send him; and the two other men

said the same. "Well," says I, "my conditions are but two; first,

that while you stay in this island with me, you will not pretend to

any authority here; and if I put arms in your hands, you will, upon

all occasions, give them up to me, and do no prejudice to me or

mine upon this island, and in the meantime be governed by my

orders; secondly, that if the ship is or may be recovered, you will

carry me and my man to England passage free."

He gave me all the assurances that the invention or faith of man

could devise that he would comply with these most reasonable

demands, and besides would owe his life to me, and acknowledge it

upon all occasions as long as he lived. "Well, then," said I,

"here are three muskets for you, with powder and ball; tell me next

what you think is proper to be done." He showed all the

testimonies of his gratitude that he was able, but offered to be

wholly guided by me. I told him I thought it was very hard

venturing anything; but the best method I could think of was to

fire on them at once as they lay, and if any were not killed at the

first volley, and offered to submit, we might save them, and so put

it wholly upon God's providence to direct the shot. He said, very

modestly, that he was loath to kill them if he could help it; but

that those two were incorrigible villains, and had been the authors

of all the mutiny in the ship, and if they escaped, we should be

undone still, for they would go on board and bring the whole ship's

company, and destroy us all. "Well, then," says I, "necessity

legitimates my advice, for it is the only way to save our lives."

However, seeing him still cautious of shedding blood, I told him

they should go themselves, and manage as they found convenient.

In the middle of this discourse we heard some of them awake, and

soon after we saw two of them on their feet. I asked him if either

of them were the heads of the mutiny? He said, "No." "Well,

then," said I, "you may let them escape; and Providence seems to

have awakened them on purpose to save themselves. Now," says I,

"if the rest escape you, it is your fault." Animated with this, he

took the musket I had given him in his hand, and a pistol in his

belt, and his two comrades with him, with each a piece in his hand;

the two men who were with him going first made some noise, at which

one of the seamen who was awake turned about, and seeing them

coming, cried out to the rest; but was too late then, for the

moment he cried out they fired - I mean the two men, the captain

wisely reserving his own piece. They had so well aimed their shot

at the men they knew, that one of them was killed on the spot, and

the other very much wounded; but not being dead, he started up on

his feet, and called eagerly for help to the other; but the captain

stepping to him, told him it was too late to cry for help, he

should call upon God to forgive his villainy, and with that word

knocked him down with the stock of his musket, so that he never

spoke more; there were three more in the company, and one of them

was slightly wounded. By this time I was come; and when they saw

their danger, and that it was in vain to resist, they begged for

mercy. The captain told them he would spare their lives if they

would give him an assurance of their abhorrence of the treachery

they had been guilty of, and would swear to be faithful to him in

recovering the ship, and afterwards in carrying her back to

Jamaica, from whence they came. They gave him all the

protestations of their sincerity that could be desired; and he was

willing to believe them, and spare their lives, which I was not

against, only that I obliged him to keep them bound hand and foot

while they were on the island.

While this was doing, I sent Friday with the captain's mate to the

boat with orders to secure her, and bring away the oars and sails,

which they did; and by-and-by three straggling men, that were

(happily for them) parted from the rest, came back upon hearing the

guns fired; and seeing the captain, who was before their prisoner,

now their conqueror, they submitted to be bound also; and so our

victory was complete.

It now remained that the captain and I should inquire into one

another's circumstances. I began first, and told him my whole

history, which he heard with an attention even to amazement - and

particularly at the wonderful manner of my being furnished with

provisions and ammunition; and, indeed, as my story is a whole

collection of wonders, it affected him deeply. But when he

reflected from thence upon himself, and how I seemed to have been

preserved there on purpose to save his life, the tears ran down his

face, and he could not speak a word more. After this communication

was at an end, I carried him and his two men into my apartment,

leading them in just where I came out, viz. at the top of the

house, where I refreshed them with such provisions as I had, and

showed them all the contrivances I had made during my long, long

inhabiting that place.

All I showed them, all I said to them, was perfectly amazing; but

above all, the captain admired my fortification, and how perfectly

I had concealed my retreat with a grove of trees, which having been

now planted nearly twenty years, and the trees growing much faster

than in England, was become a little wood, so thick that it was

impassable in any part of it but at that one side where I had

reserved my little winding passage into it. I told him this was my

castle and my residence, but that I had a seat in the country, as

most princes have, whither I could retreat upon occasion, and I

would show him that too another time; but at present our business

was to consider how to recover the ship. He agreed with me as to

that, but told me he was perfectly at a loss what measures to take,

for that there were still six-and-twenty hands on board, who,

having entered into a cursed conspiracy, by which they had all

forfeited their lives to the law, would be hardened in it now by

desperation, and would carry it on, knowing that if they were

subdued they would be brought to the gallows as soon as they came

to England, or to any of the English colonies, and that, therefore,

there would be no attacking them with so small a number as we were.

I mused for some time on what he had said, and found it was a very

rational conclusion, and that therefore something was to be

resolved on speedily, as well to draw the men on board into some

snare for their surprise as to prevent their landing upon us, and

destroying us. Upon this, it presently occurred to me that in a

little while the ship's crew, wondering what was become of their

comrades and of the boat, would certainly come on shore in their

other boat to look for them, and that then, perhaps, they might

come armed, and be too strong for us: this he allowed to be

rational. Upon this, I told him the first thing we had to do was

to stave the boat which lay upon the beach, so that they might not

carry her of, and taking everything out of her, leave her so far

useless as not to be fit to swim. Accordingly, we went on board,

took the arms which were left on board out of her, and whatever

else we found there - which was a bottle of brandy, and another of

rum, a few biscuit-cakes, a horn of powder, and a great lump of

sugar in a piece of canvas (the sugar was five or six pounds): all

which was very welcome to me, especially the brandy and sugar, of

which I had had none left for many years.

When we had carried all these things on shore (the oars, mast,

sail, and rudder of the boat were carried away before), we knocked

a great hole in her bottom, that if they had come strong enough to

master us, yet they could not carry off the boat. Indeed, it was

not much in my thoughts that we could be able to recover the ship;

but my view was, that if they went away without the boat, I did not

much question to make her again fit to carry as to the Leeward

Islands, and call upon our friends the Spaniards in my way, for I

had them still in my thoughts.

CHAPTER XVIII - THE SHIP RECOVERED

WHILE we were thus preparing our designs, and had first, by main

strength, heaved the boat upon the beach, so high that the tide

would not float her off at high-water mark, and besides, had broke

a hole in her bottom too big to be quickly stopped, and were set

down musing what we should do, we heard the ship fire a gun, and

make a waft with her ensign as a signal for the boat to come on

board - but no boat stirred; and they fired several times, making

other signals for the boat. At last, when all their signals and

firing proved fruitless, and they found the boat did not stir, we

saw them, by the help of my glasses, hoist another boat out and row

towards the shore; and we found, as they approached, that there

were no less than ten men in her, and that they had firearms with

them.

As the ship lay almost two leagues from the shore, we had a full

view of them as the came, and a plain sight even of their faces;

because the tide having set them a little to the east of the other

boat, they rowed up under shore, to come to the same place where

the other had landed, and where the boat lay; by this means, I say,

we had a full view of them, and the captain knew the persons and

characters of all the men in the boat, of whom, he said, there were

three very honest fellows, who, he was sure, were led into this

conspiracy by the rest, being over-powered and frightened; but that

as for the boatswain, who it seems was the chief officer among

them, and all the rest, they were as outrageous as any of the

ship's crew, and were no doubt made desperate in their new

enterprise; and terribly apprehensive he was that they would be too

powerful for us. I smiled at him, and told him that men in our

circumstances were past the operation of fear; that seeing almost

every condition that could be was better than that which we were

supposed to be in, we ought to expect that the consequence, whether

death or life, would be sure to be a deliverance. I asked him what

he thought of the circumstances of my life, and whether a

deliverance were not worth venturing for? "And where, sir," said

I, "is your belief of my being preserved here on purpose to save

your life, which elevated you a little while ago? For my part,"

said I, "there seems to be but one thing amiss in all the prospect

of it." "What is that?" say she. "Why," said I, "it is, that as

you say there are three or four honest fellows among them which

should be spared, had they been all of the wicked part of the crew

I should have thought God's providence had singled them out to

deliver them into your hands; for depend upon it, every man that

comes ashore is our own, and shall die or live as they behave to

us." As I spoke this with a raised voice and cheerful countenance,

I found it greatly encouraged him; so we set vigorously to our

business.

We had, upon the first appearance of the boat's coming from the

ship, considered of separating our prisoners; and we had, indeed,

secured them effectually. Two of them, of whom the captain was

less assured than ordinary, I sent with Friday, and one of the

three delivered men, to my cave, where they were remote enough, and

out of danger of being heard or discovered, or of finding their way

out of the woods if they could have delivered themselves. Here

they left them bound, but gave them provisions; and promised them,

if they continued there quietly, to give them their liberty in a

day or two; but that if they attempted their escape they should be

put to death without mercy. They promised faithfully to bear their

confinement with patience, and were very thankful that they had

such good usage as to have provisions and light left them; for

Friday gave them candles (such as we made ourselves) for their

comfort; and they did not know but that he stood sentinel over them

at the entrance.

The other prisoners had better usage; two of them were kept

pinioned, indeed, because the captain was not able to trust them;

but the other two were taken into my service, upon the captain's

recommendation, and upon their solemnly engaging to live and die

with us; so with them and the three honest men we were seven men,

well armed; and I made no doubt we should be able to deal well

enough with the ten that were coming, considering that the captain

had said there were three or four honest men among them also. As

soon as they got to the place where their other boat lay, they ran

their boat into the beach and came all on shore, hauling the boat

up after them, which I was glad to see, for I was afraid they would

rather have left the boat at an anchor some distance from the

shore, with some hands in her to guard her, and so we should not be

able to seize the boat. Being on shore, the first thing they did,

they ran all to their other boat; and it was easy to see they were

under a great surprise to find her stripped, as above, of all that

was in her, and a great hole in her bottom. After they had mused a

while upon this, they set up two or three great shouts, hallooing

with all their might, to try if they could make their companions

hear; but all was to no purpose. Then they came all close in a

ring, and fired a volley of their small arms, which indeed we

heard, and the echoes made the woods ring. But it was all one;

those in the cave, we were sure, could not hear; and those in our

keeping, though they heard it well enough, yet durst give no answer

to them. They were so astonished at the surprise of this, that, as

they told us afterwards, they resolved to go all on board again to

their ship, and let them know that the men were all murdered, and

the long-boat staved; accordingly, they immediately launched their

boat again, and got all of them on board.

The captain was terribly amazed, and even confounded, at this,

believing they would go on board the ship again and set sail,

giving their comrades over for lost, and so he should still lose

the ship, which he was in hopes we should have recovered; but he

was quickly as much frightened the other way.

They had not been long put off with the boat, when we perceived

them all coming on shore again; but with this new measure in their

conduct, which it seems they consulted together upon, viz. to leave

three men in the boat, and the rest to go on shore, and go up into

the country to look for their fellows. This was a great

disappointment to us, for now we were at a loss what to do, as our

seizing those seven men on shore would be no advantage to us if we

let the boat escape; because they would row away to the ship, and

then the rest of them would be sure to weigh and set sail, and so

our recovering the ship would be lost. However we had no remedy

but to wait and see what the issue of things might present. The

seven men came on shore, and the three who remained in the boat put

her off to a good distance from the shore, and came to an anchor to

wait for them; so that it was impossible for us to come at them in

the boat. Those that came on shore kept close together, marching

towards the top of the little hill under which my habitation lay;

and we could see them plainly, though they could not perceive us.

We should have been very glad if they would have come nearer us, so

that we might have fired at them, or that they would have gone

farther off, that we might come abroad. But when they were come to

the brow of the hill where they could see a great way into the

valleys and woods, which lay towards the north-east part, and where

the island lay lowest, they shouted and hallooed till they were

weary; and not caring, it seems, to venture far from the shore, nor

far from one another, they sat down together under a tree to

consider it. Had they thought fit to have gone to sleep there, as

the other part of them had done, they had done the job for us; but

they were too full of apprehensions of danger to venture to go to

sleep, though they could not tell what the danger was they had to

fear.

The captain made a very just proposal to me upon this consultation

of theirs, viz. that perhaps they would all fire a volley again, to

endeavour to make their fellows hear, and that we should all sally

upon them just at the juncture when their pieces were all

discharged, and they would certainly yield, and we should have them

without bloodshed. I liked this proposal, provided it was done

while we were near enough to come up to them before they could load

their pieces again. But this event did not happen; and we lay

still a long time, very irresolute what course to take. At length

I told them there would be nothing done, in my opinion, till night;

and then, if they did not return to the boat, perhaps we might find

a way to get between them and the shore, and so might use some

stratagem with them in the boat to get them on shore. We waited a

great while, though very impatient for their removing; and were

very uneasy when, after long consultation, we saw them all start up

and march down towards the sea; it seems they had such dreadful

apprehensions of the danger of the place that they resolved to go

on board the ship again, give their companions over for lost, and

so go on with their intended voyage with the ship.

As soon as I perceived them go towards the shore, I imagined it to

be as it really was that they had given over their search, and were

going back again; and the captain, as soon as I told him my

thoughts, was ready to sink at the apprehensions of it; but I

presently thought of a stratagem to fetch them back again, and

which answered my end to a tittle. I ordered Friday and the

captain's mate to go over the little creek westward, towards the

place where the savages came on shore, when Friday was rescued, and

so soon as they came to a little rising round, at about half a mile

distant, I bid them halloo out, as loud as they could, and wait

till they found the seamen heard them; that as soon as ever they

heard the seamen answer them, they should return it again; and

then, keeping out of sight, take a round, always answering when the

others hallooed, to draw them as far into the island and among the

woods as possible, and then wheel about again to me by such ways as

I directed them.

They were just going into the boat when Friday and the mate

hallooed; and they presently heard them, and answering, ran along

the shore westward, towards the voice they heard, when they were

stopped by the creek, where the water being up, they could not get

over, and called for the boat to come up and set them over; as,

indeed, I expected. When they had set themselves over, I observed

that the boat being gone a good way into the creek, and, as it

were, in a harbour within the land, they took one of the three men

out of her, to go along with them, and left only two in the boat,

having fastened her to the stump of a little tree on the shore.

This was what I wished for; and immediately leaving Friday and the

captain's mate to their business, I took the rest with me; and,

crossing the creek out of their sight, we surprised the two men

before they were aware - one of them lying on the shore, and the

other being in the boat. The fellow on shore was between sleeping

and waking, and going to start up; the captain, who was foremost,

ran in upon him, and knocked him down; and then called out to him

in the boat to yield, or he was a dead man. They needed very few

arguments to persuade a single man to yield, when he saw five men

upon him and his comrade knocked down: besides, this was, it seems,

one of the three who were not so hearty in the mutiny as the rest

of the crew, and therefore was easily persuaded not only to yield,

but afterwards to join very sincerely with us. In the meantime,

Friday and the captain's mate so well managed their business with

the rest that they drew them, by hallooing and answering, from one

hill to another, and from one wood to another, till they not only

heartily tired them, but left them where they were, very sure they

could not reach back to the boat before it was dark; and, indeed,

they were heartily tired themselves also, by the time they came

back to us.

We had nothing now to do but to watch for them in the dark, and to

fall upon them, so as to make sure work with them. It was several

hours after Friday came back to me before they came back to their

boat; and we could hear the foremost of them, long before they came

quite up, calling to those behind to come along; and could also

hear them answer, and complain how lame and tired they were, and

not able to come any faster: which was very welcome news to us. At

length they came up to the boat: but it is impossible to express

their confusion when they found the boat fast aground in the creek,

the tide ebbed out, and their two men gone. We could hear them

call one to another in a most lamentable manner, telling one

another they were got into an enchanted island; that either there

were inhabitants in it, and they should all be murdered, or else

there were devils and spirits in it, and they should be all carried

away and devoured. They hallooed again, and called their two

comrades by their names a great many times; but no answer. After

some time we could see them, by the little light there was, run

about, wringing their hands like men in despair, and sometimes they

would go and sit down in the boat to rest themselves: then come

ashore again, and walk about again, and so the same thing over

again. My men would fain have had me give them leave to fall upon

them at once in the dark; but I was willing to take them at some

advantage, so as to spare them, and kill as few of them as I could;

and especially I was unwilling to hazard the killing of any of our

men, knowing the others were very well armed. I resolved to wait,

to see if they did not separate; and therefore, to make sure of

them, I drew my ambuscade nearer, and ordered Friday and the

captain to creep upon their hands and feet, as close to the ground

as they could, that they might not be discovered, and get as near

them as they could possibly before they offered to fire.

They had not been long in that posture when the boatswain, who was

the principal ringleader of the mutiny, and had now shown himself

the most dejected and dispirited of all the rest, came walking

towards them, with two more of the crew; the captain was so eager

at having this principal rogue so much in his power, that he could

hardly have patience to let him come so near as to be sure of him,

for they only heard his tongue before: but when they came nearer,

the captain and Friday, starting up on their feet, let fly at them.

The boatswain was killed upon the spot: the next man was shot in

the body, and fell just by him, though he did not die till an hour

or two after; and the third ran for it. At the noise of the fire I

immediately advanced with my whole army, which was now eight men,

viz. myself, generalissimo; Friday, my lieutenant-general; the

captain and his two men, and the three prisoners of war whom we had

trusted with arms. We came upon them, indeed, in the dark, so that

they could not see our number; and I made the man they had left in

the boat, who was now one of us, to call them by name, to try if I

could bring them to a parley, and so perhaps might reduce them to

terms; which fell out just as we desired: for indeed it was easy to

think, as their condition then was, they would be very willing to

capitulate. So he calls out as loud as he could to one of them,

"Tom Smith! Tom Smith!" Tom Smith answered immediately, "Is that

Robinson?" for it seems he knew the voice. The other answered,

"Ay, ay; for God's sake, Tom Smith, throw down your arms and yield,

or you are all dead men this moment." "Who must we yield to?

Where are they?" says Smith again. "Here they are," says he;

"here's our captain and fifty men with him, have been hunting you

these two hours; the boatswain is killed; Will Fry is wounded, and

I am a prisoner; and if you do not yield you are all lost." "Will

they give us quarter, then?" says Tom Smith, "and we will yield."

"I'll go and ask, if you promise to yield," said Robinson: so he

asked the captain, and the captain himself then calls out, "You,

Smith, you know my voice; if you lay down your arms immediately and

submit, you shall have your lives, all but Will Atkins."

Upon this Will Atkins cried out, "For God's sake, captain, give me

quarter; what have I done? They have all been as bad as I:" which,

by the way, was not true; for it seems this Will Atkins was the

first man that laid hold of the captain when they first mutinied,

and used him barbarously in tying his hands and giving him

injurious language. However, the captain told him he must lay down

his arms at discretion, and trust to the governor's mercy: by which

he meant me, for they all called me governor. In a word, they all

laid down their arms and begged their lives; and I sent the man

that had parleyed with them, and two more, who bound them all; and

then my great army of fifty men, which, with those three, were in

all but eight, came up and seized upon them, and upon their boat;

only that I kept myself and one more out of sight for reasons of

state.

Our next work was to repair the boat, and think of seizing the

ship: and as for the captain, now he had leisure to parley with

them, he expostulated with them upon the villainy of their

practices with him, and upon the further wickedness of their

design, and how certainly it must bring them to misery and distress

in the end, and perhaps to the gallows. They all appeared very

penitent, and begged hard for their lives. As for that, he told

them they were not his prisoners, but the commander's of the

island; that they thought they had set him on shore in a barren,

uninhabited island; but it had pleased God so to direct them that

it was inhabited, and that the governor was an Englishman; that he

might hang them all there, if he pleased; but as he had given them

all quarter, he supposed he would send them to England, to be dealt

with there as justice required, except Atkins, whom he was

commanded by the governor to advise to prepare for death, for that

he would be hanged in the morning.

Though this was all but a fiction of his own, yet it had its

desired effect; Atkins fell upon his knees to beg the captain to

intercede with the governor for his life; and all the rest begged

of him, for God's sake, that they might not be sent to England.

It now occurred to me that the time of our deliverance was come,

and that it would be a most easy thing to bring these fellows in to

be hearty in getting possession of the ship; so I retired in the

dark from them, that they might not see what kind of a governor

they had, and called the captain to me; when I called, at a good

distance, one of the men was ordered to speak again, and say to the

captain, "Captain, the commander calls for you;" and presently the

captain replied, "Tell his excellency I am just coming." This more

perfectly amazed them, and they all believed that the commander was

just by, with his fifty men. Upon the captain coming to me, I told

him my project for seizing the ship, which he liked wonderfully

well, and resolved to put it in execution the next morning. But,

in order to execute it with more art, and to be secure of success,

I told him we must divide the prisoners, and that he should go and

take Atkins, and two more of the worst of them, and send them

pinioned to the cave where the others lay. This was committed to

Friday and the two men who came on shore with the captain. They

conveyed them to the cave as to a prison: and it was, indeed, a

dismal place, especially to men in their condition. The others I

ordered to my bower, as I called it, of which I have given a full

description: and as it was fenced in, and they pinioned, the place

was secure enough, considering they were upon their behaviour.

To these in the morning I sent the captain, who was to enter into a

parley with them; in a word, to try them, and tell me whether he

thought they might be trusted or not to go on board and surprise

the ship. He talked to them of the injury done him, of the

condition they were brought to, and that though the governor had

given them quarter for their lives as to the present action, yet

that if they were sent to England they would all be hanged in

chains; but that if they would join in so just an attempt as to

recover the ship, he would have the governor's engagement for their

pardon.

Any one may guess how readily such a proposal would be accepted by

men in their condition; they fell down on their knees to the

captain, and promised, with the deepest imprecations, that they

would be faithful to him to the last drop, and that they should owe

their lives to him, and would go with him all over the world; that

they would own him as a father to them as long as they lived.

"Well," says the captain, "I must go and tell the governor what you

say, and see what I can do to bring him to consent to it." So he

brought me an account of the temper he found them in, and that he

verily believed they would be faithful. However, that we might be

very secure, I told him he should go back again and choose out

those five, and tell them, that they might see he did not want men,

that he would take out those five to be his assistants, and that

the governor would keep the other two, and the three that were sent

prisoners to the castle (my cave), as hostages for the fidelity of

those five; and that if they proved unfaithful in the execution,

the five hostages should be hanged in chains alive on the shore.

This looked severe, and convinced them that the governor was in

earnest; however, they had no way left them but to accept it; and

it was now the business of the prisoners, as much as of the

captain, to persuade the other five to do their duty.

Our strength was now thus ordered for the expedition: first, the

captain, his mate, and passenger; second, the two prisoners of the

first gang, to whom, having their character from the captain, I had

given their liberty, and trusted them with arms; third, the other

two that I had kept till now in my bower, pinioned, but on the

captain's motion had now released; fourth, these five released at

last; so that there were twelve in all, besides five we kept

prisoners in the cave for hostages.

I asked the captain if he was willing to venture with these hands

on board the ship; but as for me and my man Friday, I did not think

it was proper for us to stir, having seven men left behind; and it

was employment enough for us to keep them asunder, and supply them

with victuals. As to the five in the cave, I resolved to keep them

fast, but Friday went in twice a day to them, to supply them with

necessaries; and I made the other two carry provisions to a certain

distance, where Friday was to take them.

When I showed myself to the two hostages, it was with the captain,

who told them I was the person the governor had ordered to look

after them; and that it was the governor's pleasure they should not

stir anywhere but by my direction; that if they did, they would be

fetched into the castle, and be laid in irons: so that as we never

suffered them to see me as governor, I now appeared as another

person, and spoke of the governor, the garrison, the castle, and

the like, upon all occasions.

The captain now had no difficulty before him, but to furnish his

two boats, stop the breach of one, and man them. He made his

passenger captain of one, with four of the men; and himself, his

mate, and five more, went in the other; and they contrived their

business very well, for they came up to the ship about midnight.

As soon as they came within call of the ship, he made Robinson hail

them, and tell them they had brought off the men and the boat, but

that it was a long time before they had found them, and the like,

holding them in a chat till they came to the ship's side; when the

captain and the mate entering first with their arms, immediately

knocked down the second mate and carpenter with the butt-end of

their muskets, being very faithfully seconded by their men; they

secured all the rest that were upon the main and quarter decks, and

began to fasten the hatches, to keep them down that were below;

when the other boat and their men, entering at the forechains,

secured the forecastle of the ship, and the scuttle which went down

into the cook-room, making three men they found there prisoners.

When this was done, and all safe upon deck, the captain ordered the

mate, with three men, to break into the round-house, where the new

rebel captain lay, who, having taken the alarm, had got up, and

with two men and a boy had got firearms in their hands; and when

the mate, with a crow, split open the door, the new captain and his

men fired boldly among them, and wounded the mate with a musket

ball, which broke his arm, and wounded two more of the men, but

killed nobody. The mate, calling for help, rushed, however, into

the round-house, wounded as he was, and, with his pistol, shot the

new captain through the head, the bullet entering at his mouth, and

came out again behind one of his ears, so that he never spoke a

word more: upon which the rest yielded, and the ship was taken

effectually, without any more lives lost.

As soon as the ship was thus secured, the captain ordered seven

guns to be fired, which was the signal agreed upon with me to give

me notice of his success, which, you may be sure, I was very glad

to hear, having sat watching upon the shore for it till near two

o'clock in the morning. Having thus heard the signal plainly, I

laid me down; and it having been a day of great fatigue to me, I

slept very sound, till I was surprised with the noise of a gun; and

presently starting up, I heard a man call me by the name of

"Governor! Governor!" and presently I knew the captain's voice;

when, climbing up to the top of the hill, there he stood, and,

pointing to the ship, he embraced me in his arms, "My dear friend

and deliverer," says he, "there's your ship; for she is all yours,

and so are we, and all that belong to her." I cast my eyes to the

ship, and there she rode, within little more than half a mile of

the shore; for they had weighed her anchor as soon as they were

masters of her, and, the weather being fair, had brought her to an

anchor just against the mouth of the little creek; and the tide

being up, the captain had brought the pinnace in near the place

where I had first landed my rafts, and so landed just at my door.

I was at first ready to sink down with the surprise; for I saw my

deliverance, indeed, visibly put into my hands, all things easy,

and a large ship just ready to carry me away whither I pleased to

go. At first, for some time, I was not able to answer him one

word; but as he had taken me in his arms I held fast by him, or I

should have fallen to the ground. He perceived the surprise, and

immediately pulled a bottle out of his pocket and gave me a dram of

cordial, which he had brought on purpose for me. After I had drunk

it, I sat down upon the ground; and though it brought me to myself,

yet it was a good while before I could speak a word to him. All

this time the poor man was in as great an ecstasy as I, only not

under any surprise as I was; and he said a thousand kind and tender

things to me, to compose and bring me to myself; but such was the

flood of joy in my breast, that it put all my spirits into

confusion: at last it broke out into tears, and in a little while

after I recovered my speech; I then took my turn, and embraced him

as my deliverer, and we rejoiced together. I told him I looked

upon him as a man sent by Heaven to deliver me, and that the whole

transaction seemed to be a chain of wonders; that such things as

these were the testimonies we had of a secret hand of Providence

governing the world, and an evidence that the eye of an infinite

Power could search into the remotest corner of the world, and send

help to the miserable whenever He pleased. I forgot not to lift up

my heart in thankfulness to Heaven; and what heart could forbear to

bless Him, who had not only in a miraculous manner provided for me

in such a wilderness, and in such a desolate condition, but from

whom every deliverance must always be acknowledged to proceed.

When we had talked a while, the captain told me he had brought me

some little refreshment, such as the ship afforded, and such as the

wretches that had been so long his masters had not plundered him

of. Upon this, he called aloud to the boat, and bade his men bring

the things ashore that were for the governor; and, indeed, it was a

present as if I had been one that was not to be carried away with

them, but as if I had been to dwell upon the island still. First,

he had brought me a case of bottles full of excellent cordial

waters, six large bottles of Madeira wine (the bottles held two

quarts each), two pounds of excellent good tobacco, twelve good

pieces of the ship's beef, and six pieces of pork, with a bag of

peas, and about a hundred-weight of biscuit; he also brought me a

box of sugar, a box of flour, a bag full of lemons, and two bottles

of lime-juice, and abundance of other things. But besides these,

and what was a thousand times more useful to me, he brought me six

new clean shirts, six very good neckcloths, two pair of gloves, one

pair of shoes, a hat, and one pair of stockings, with a very good

suit of clothes of his own, which had been worn but very little: in

a word, he clothed me from head to foot. It was a very kind and

agreeable present, as any one may imagine, to one in my

circumstances, but never was anything in the world of that kind so

unpleasant, awkward, and uneasy as it was to me to wear such

clothes at first.

After these ceremonies were past, and after all his good things

were brought into my little apartment, we began to consult what was

to be done with the prisoners we had; for it was worth considering

whether we might venture to take them with us or no, especially two

of them, whom he knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the last

degree; and the captain said he knew they were such rogues that

there was no obliging them, and if he did carry them away, it must

be in irons, as malefactors, to be delivered over to justice at the

first English colony he could come to; and I found that the captain

himself was very anxious about it. Upon this, I told him that, if

he desired it, I would undertake to bring the two men he spoke of

to make it their own request that he should leave them upon the

island. "I should be very glad of that," says the captain, "with

all my heart." "Well," says I, "I will send for them up and talk

with them for you." So I caused Friday and the two hostages, for

they were now discharged, their comrades having performed their

promise; I say, I caused them to go to the cave, and bring up the

five men, pinioned as they were, to the bower, and keep them there

till I came. After some time, I came thither dressed in my new

habit; and now I was called governor again. Being all met, and the

captain with me, I caused the men to be brought before me, and I

told them I had got a full account of their villainous behaviour to

the captain, and how they had run away with the ship, and were

preparing to commit further robberies, but that Providence had

ensnared them in their own ways, and that they were fallen into the

pit which they had dug for others. I let them know that by my

direction the ship had been seized; that she lay now in the road;

and they might see by-and-by that their new captain had received

the reward of his villainy, and that they would see him hanging at

the yard-arm; that, as to them, I wanted to know what they had to

say why I should not execute them as pirates taken in the fact, as

by my commission they could not doubt but I had authority so to do.

One of them answered in the name of the rest, that they had nothing

to say but this, that when they were taken the captain promised

them their lives, and they humbly implored my mercy. But I told

them I knew not what mercy to show them; for as for myself, I had

resolved to quit the island with all my men, and had taken passage

with the captain to go to England; and as for the captain, he could

not carry them to England other than as prisoners in irons, to be

tried for mutiny and running away with the ship; the consequence of

which, they must needs know, would be the gallows; so that I could

not tell what was best for them, unless they had a mind to take

their fate in the island. If they desired that, as I had liberty

to leave the island, I had some inclination to give them their

lives, if they thought they could shift on shore. They seemed very

thankful for it, and said they would much rather venture to stay

there than be carried to England to be hanged. So I left it on

that issue.

However, the captain seemed to make some difficulty of it, as if he

durst not leave them there. Upon this I seemed a little angry with

the captain, and told him that they were my prisoners, not his; and

that seeing I had offered them so much favour, I would be as good

as my word; and that if he did not think fit to consent to it I

would set them at liberty, as I found them: and if he did not like

it he might take them again if he could catch them. Upon this they

appeared very thankful, and I accordingly set them at liberty, and

bade them retire into the woods, to the place whence they came, and

I would leave them some firearms, some ammunition, and some

directions how they should live very well if they thought fit.

Upon this I prepared to go on board the ship; but told the captain

I would stay that night to prepare my things, and desired him to go

on board in the meantime, and keep all right in the ship, and send

the boat on shore next day for me; ordering him, at all events, to

cause the new captain, who was killed, to be hanged at the yard-

arm, that these men might see him.

When the captain was gone I sent for the men up to me to my

apartment, and entered seriously into discourse with them on their

circumstances. I told them I thought they had made a right choice;

that if the captain had carried them away they would certainly be

hanged. I showed them the new captain hanging at the yard-arm of

the ship, and told them they had nothing less to expect.

When they had all declared their willingness to stay, I then told

them I would let them into the story of my living there, and put

them into the way of making it easy to them. Accordingly, I gave

them the whole history of the place, and of my coming to it; showed

them my fortifications, the way I made my bread, planted my corn,

cured my grapes; and, in a word, all that was necessary to make

them easy. I told them the story also of the seventeen Spaniards

that were to be expected, for whom I left a letter, and made them

promise to treat them in common with themselves. Here it may be

noted that the captain, who had ink on board, was greatly surprised

that I never hit upon a way of making ink of charcoal and water, or

of something else, as I had done things much more difficult.

I left them my firearms - viz. five muskets, three fowling-pieces,

and three swords. I had above a barrel and a half of powder left;

for after the first year or two I used but little, and wasted none.

I gave them a description of the way I managed the goats, and

directions to milk and fatten them, and to make both butter and

cheese. In a word, I gave them every part of my own story; and

told them I should prevail with the captain to leave them two

barrels of gunpowder more, and some garden-seeds, which I told them

I would have been very glad of. Also, I gave them the bag of peas

which the captain had brought me to eat, and bade them be sure to

sow and increase them.

CHAPTER XIX - RETURN TO ENGLAND

HAVING done all this I left them the next day, and went on board

the ship. We prepared immediately to sail, but did not weigh that

night. The next morning early, two of the five men came swimming

to the ship's side, and making the most lamentable complaint of the

other three, begged to be taken into the ship for God's sake, for

they should be murdered, and begged the captain to take them on

board, though he hanged them immediately. Upon this the captain

pretended to have no power without me; but after some difficulty,

and after their solemn promises of amendment, they were taken on

board, and were, some time after, soundly whipped and pickled;

after which they proved very honest and quiet fellows.

Some time after this, the boat was ordered on shore, the tide being

up, with the things promised to the men; to which the captain, at

my intercession, caused their chests and clothes to be added, which

they took, and were very thankful for. I also encouraged them, by

telling them that if it lay in my power to send any vessel to take

them in, I would not forget them.

When I took leave of this island, I carried on board, for relics,

the great goat-skin cap I had made, my umbrella, and one of my

parrots; also, I forgot not to take the money I formerly mentioned,

which had lain by me so long useless that it was grown rusty or

tarnished, and could hardly pass for silver till it had been a

little rubbed and handled, as also the money I found in the wreck

of the Spanish ship. And thus I left the island, the 19th of

December, as I found by the ship's account, in the year 1686, after

I had been upon it eight-and-twenty years, two months, and nineteen

days; being delivered from this second captivity the same day of

the month that I first made my escape in the long-boat from among

the Moors of Sallee. In this vessel, after a long voyage, I

arrived in England the 11th of June, in the year 1687, having been

thirty-five years absent.

When I came to England I was as perfect a stranger to all the world

as if I had never been known there. My benefactor and faithful

steward, whom I had left my money in trust with, was alive, but had

had great misfortunes in the world; was become a widow the second

time, and very low in the world. I made her very easy as to what

she owed me, assuring her I would give her no trouble; but, on the

contrary, in gratitude for her former care and faithfulness to me,

I relieved her as my little stock would afford; which at that time

would, indeed, allow me to do but little for her; but I assured her

I would never forget her former kindness to me; nor did I forget

her when I had sufficient to help her, as shall be observed in its

proper place. I went down afterwards into Yorkshire; but my father

was dead, and my mother and all the family extinct, except that I

found two sisters, and two of the children of one of my brothers;

and as I had been long ago given over for dead, there had been no

provision made for me; so that, in a word, I found nothing to

relieve or assist me; and that the little money I had would not do

much for me as to settling in the world.

I met with one piece of gratitude indeed, which I did not expect;

and this was, that the master of the ship, whom I had so happily

delivered, and by the same means saved the ship and cargo, having

given a very handsome account to the owners of the manner how I had

saved the lives of the men and the ship, they invited me to meet

them and some other merchants concerned, and all together made me a

very handsome compliment upon the subject, and a present of almost

200 pounds sterling.

But after making several reflections upon the circumstances of my

life, and how little way this would go towards settling me in the

world, I resolved to go to Lisbon, and see if I might not come at

some information of the state of my plantation in the Brazils, and

of what was become of my partner, who, I had reason to suppose, had

some years past given me over for dead. With this view I took

shipping for Lisbon, where I arrived in April following, my man

Friday accompanying me very honestly in all these ramblings, and

proving a most faithful servant upon all occasions. When I came to

Lisbon, I found out, by inquiry, and to my particular satisfaction,

my old friend, the captain of the ship who first took me up at sea

off the shore of Africa. He was now grown old, and had left off

going to sea, having put his son, who was far from a young man,

into his ship, and who still used the Brazil trade. The old man

did not know me, and indeed I hardly knew him. But I soon brought

him to my remembrance, and as soon brought myself to his

remembrance, when I told him who I was.

After some passionate expressions of the old acquaintance between

us, I inquired, you may he sure, after my plantation and my

partner. The old man told me he had not been in the Brazils for

about nine years; but that he could assure me that when he came

away my partner was living, but the trustees whom I had joined with

him to take cognisance of my part were both dead: that, however, he

believed I would have a very good account of the improvement of the

plantation; for that, upon the general belief of my being cast away

and drowned, my trustees had given in the account of the produce of

my part of the plantation to the procurator-fiscal, who had

appropriated it, in case I never came to claim it, one-third to the

king, and two-thirds to the monastery of St. Augustine, to be

expended for the benefit of the poor, and for the conversion of the

Indians to the Catholic faith: but that, if I appeared, or any one

for me, to claim the inheritance, it would be restored; only that

the improvement, or annual production, being distributed to

charitable uses, could not be restored: but he assured me that the

steward of the king's revenue from lands, and the providore, or

steward of the monastery, had taken great care all along that the

incumbent, that is to say my partner, gave every year a faithful

account of the produce, of which they had duly received my moiety.

I asked him if he knew to what height of improvement he had brought

the plantation, and whether he thought it might be worth looking

after; or whether, on my going thither, I should meet with any

obstruction to my possessing my just right in the moiety. He told

me he could not tell exactly to what degree the plantation was

improved; but this he knew, that my partner was grown exceeding

rich upon the enjoying his part of it; and that, to the best of his

remembrance, he had heard that the king's third of my part, which

was, it seems, granted away to some other monastery or religious

house, amounted to above two hundred moidores a year: that as to my

being restored to a quiet possession of it, there was no question

to be made of that, my partner being alive to witness my title, and

my name being also enrolled in the register of the country; also he

told me that the survivors of my two trustees were very fair,

honest people, and very wealthy; and he believed I would not only

have their assistance for putting me in possession, but would find

a very considerable sum of money in their hands for my account,

being the produce of the farm while their fathers held the trust,

and before it was given up, as above; which, as he remembered, was

for about twelve years.

I showed myself a little concerned and uneasy at this account, and

inquired of the old captain how it came to pass that the trustees

should thus dispose of my effects, when he knew that I had made my

will, and had made him, the Portuguese captain, my universal heir,

&c.

He told me that was true; but that as there was no proof of my

being dead, he could not act as executor until some certain account

should come of my death; and, besides, he was not willing to

intermeddle with a thing so remote: that it was true he had

registered my will, and put in his claim; and could he have given

any account of my being dead or alive, he would have acted by

procuration, and taken possession of the ingenio (so they call the

sugar-house), and have given his son, who was now at the Brazils,

orders to do it. "But," says the old man, "I have one piece of

news to tell you, which perhaps may not be so acceptable to you as

the rest; and that is, believing you were lost, and all the world

believing so also, your partner and trustees did offer to account

with me, in your name, for the first six or eight years' profits,

which I received. There being at that time great disbursements for

increasing the works, building an ingenio, and buying slaves, it

did not amount to near so much as afterwards it produced; however,"

says the old man, "I shall give you a true account of what I have

received in all, and how I have disposed of it."

After a few days' further conference with this ancient friend, he

brought me an account of the first six years' income of my

plantation, signed by my partner and the merchant-trustees, being

always delivered in goods, viz. tobacco in roll, and sugar in

chests, besides rum, molasses, &c., which is the consequence of a

sugar-work; and I found by this account, that every year the income

considerably increased; but, as above, the disbursements being

large, the sum at first was small: however, the old man let me see

that he was debtor to me four hundred and seventy moidores of gold,

besides sixty chests of sugar and fifteen double rolls of tobacco,

which were lost in his ship; he having been shipwrecked coming home

to Lisbon, about eleven years after my having the place. The good

man then began to complain of his misfortunes, and how he had been

obliged to make use of my money to recover his losses, and buy him

a share in a new ship. "However, my old friend," says he, "you

shall not want a supply in your necessity; and as soon as my son

returns you shall be fully satisfied." Upon this he pulls out an

old pouch, and gives me one hundred and sixty Portugal moidores in

gold; and giving the writings of his title to the ship, which his

son was gone to the Brazils in, of which he was quarter-part owner,

and his son another, he puts them both into my hands for security

of the rest.

I was too much moved with the honesty and kindness of the poor man

to be able to bear this; and remembering what he had done for me,

how he had taken me up at sea, and how generously he had used me on

all occasions, and particularly how sincere a friend he was now to

me, I could hardly refrain weeping at what he had said to me;

therefore I asked him if his circumstances admitted him to spare so

much money at that time, and if it would not straiten him? He told

me he could not say but it might straiten him a little; but,

however, it was my money, and I might want it more than he.

Everything the good man said was full of affection, and I could

hardly refrain from tears while he spoke; in short, I took one

hundred of the moidores, and called for a pen and ink to give him a

receipt for them: then I returned him the rest, and told him if

ever I had possession of the plantation I would return the other to

him also (as, indeed, I afterwards did); and that as to the bill of

sale of his part in his son's ship, I would not take it by any

means; but that if I wanted the money, I found he was honest enough

to pay me; and if I did not, but came to receive what he gave me

reason to expect, I would never have a penny more from him.

When this was past, the old man asked me if he should put me into a

method to make my claim to my plantation. I told him I thought to

go over to it myself. He said I might do so if I pleased, but that

if I did not, there were ways enough to secure my right, and

immediately to appropriate the profits to my use: and as there were

ships in the river of Lisbon just ready to go away to Brazil, he

made me enter my name in a public register, with his affidavit,

affirming, upon oath, that I was alive, and that I was the same

person who took up the land for the planting the said plantation at

first. This being regularly attested by a notary, and a

procuration affixed, he directed me to send it, with a letter of

his writing, to a merchant of his acquaintance at the place; and

then proposed my staying with him till an account came of the

return.

Never was anything more honourable than the proceedings upon this

procuration; for in less than seven months I received a large

packet from the survivors of my trustees, the merchants, for whose

account I went to sea, in which were the following, particular

letters and papers enclosed:-

First, there was the account-current of the produce of my farm or

plantation, from the year when their fathers had balanced with my

old Portugal captain, being for six years; the balance appeared to

be one thousand one hundred and seventy-four moidores in my favour.

Secondly, there was the account of four years more, while they kept

the effects in their hands, before the government claimed the

administration, as being the effects of a person not to be found,

which they called civil death; and the balance of this, the value

of the plantation increasing, amounted to nineteen thousand four

hundred and forty-six crusadoes, being about three thousand two

hundred and forty moidores.

Thirdly, there was the Prior of St. Augustine's account, who had

received the profits for above fourteen years; but not being able

to account for what was disposed of by the hospital, very honestly

declared he had eight hundred and seventy-two moidores not

distributed, which he acknowledged to my account: as to the king's

part, that refunded nothing.

There was a letter of my partner's, congratulating me very

affectionately upon my being alive, giving me an account how the

estate was improved, and what it produced a year; with the

particulars of the number of squares, or acres that it contained,

how planted, how many slaves there were upon it: and making two-

and-twenty crosses for blessings, told me he had said so many AVE

MARIAS to thank the Blessed Virgin that I was alive; inviting me

very passionately to come over and take possession of my own, and

in the meantime to give him orders to whom he should deliver my

effects if I did not come myself; concluding with a hearty tender

of his friendship, and that of his family; and sent me as a present

seven fine leopards' skins, which he had, it seems, received from

Africa, by some other ship that he had sent thither, and which, it

seems, had made a better voyage than I. He sent me also five

chests of excellent sweetmeats, and a hundred pieces of gold

uncoined, not quite so large as moidores. By the same fleet my two

merchant-trustees shipped me one thousand two hundred chests of

sugar, eight hundred rolls of tobacco, and the rest of the whole

account in gold.

I might well say now, indeed, that the latter end of Job was better

than the beginning. It is impossible to express the flutterings of

my very heart when I found all my wealth about me; for as the

Brazil ships come all in fleets, the same ships which brought my

letters brought my goods: and the effects were safe in the river

before the letters came to my hand. In a word, I turned pale, and

grew sick; and, had not the old man run and fetched me a cordial, I

believe the sudden surprise of joy had overset nature, and I had

died upon the spot: nay, after that I continued very ill, and was

so some hours, till a physician being sent for, and something of

the real cause of my illness being known, he ordered me to be let

blood; after which I had relief, and grew well: but I verify

believe, if I had not been eased by a vent given in that manner to

the spirits, I should have died.

I was now master, all on a sudden, of above five thousand pounds

sterling in money, and had an estate, as I might well call it, in

the Brazils, of above a thousand pounds a year, as sure as an

estate of lands in England: and, in a word, I was in a condition

which I scarce knew how to understand, or how to compose myself for

the enjoyment of it. The first thing I did was to recompense my

original benefactor, my good old captain, who had been first

charitable to me in my distress, kind to me in my beginning, and

honest to me at the end. I showed him all that was sent to me; I

told him that, next to the providence of Heaven, which disposed all

things, it was owing to him; and that it now lay on me to reward

him, which I would do a hundred-fold: so I first returned to him

the hundred moidores I had received of him; then I sent for a

notary, and caused him to draw up a general release or discharge

from the four hundred and seventy moidores, which he had

acknowledged he owed me, in the fullest and firmest manner

possible. After which I caused a procuration to be drawn,

empowering him to be the receiver of the annual profits of my

plantation: and appointing my partner to account with him, and make

the returns, by the usual fleets, to him in my name; and by a

clause in the end, made a grant of one hundred moidores a year to

him during his life, out of the effects, and fifty moidores a year

to his son after him, for his life: and thus I requited my old man.

I had now to consider which way to steer my course next, and what

to do with the estate that Providence had thus put into my hands;

and, indeed, I had more care upon my head now than I had in my

state of life in the island where I wanted nothing but what I had,

and had nothing but what I wanted; whereas I had now a great charge

upon me, and my business was how to secure it. I had not a cave

now to hide my money in, or a place where it might lie without lock

or key, till it grew mouldy and tarnished before anybody would

meddle with it; on the contrary, I knew not where to put it, or

whom to trust with it. My old patron, the captain, indeed, was

honest, and that was the only refuge I had. In the next place, my

interest in the Brazils seemed to summon me thither; but now I

could not tell how to think of going thither till I had settled my

affairs, and left my effects in some safe hands behind me. At

first I thought of my old friend the widow, who I knew was honest,

and would be just to me; but then she was in years, and but poor,

and, for aught I knew, might be in debt: so that, in a word, I had

no way but to go back to England myself and take my effects with

me.

It was some months, however, before I resolved upon this; and,

therefore, as I had rewarded the old captain fully, and to his

satisfaction, who had been my former benefactor, so I began to

think of the poor widow, whose husband had been my first

benefactor, and she, while it was in her power, my faithful steward

and instructor. So, the first thing I did, I got a merchant in

Lisbon to write to his correspondent in London, not only to pay a

bill, but to go find her out, and carry her, in money, a hundred

pounds from me, and to talk with her, and comfort her in her

poverty, by telling her she should, if I lived, have a further

supply: at the same time I sent my two sisters in the country a

hundred pounds each, they being, though not in want, yet not in

very good circumstances; one having been married and left a widow;

and the other having a husband not so kind to her as he should be.

But among all my relations or acquaintances I could not yet pitch

upon one to whom I durst commit the gross of my stock, that I might

go away to the Brazils, and leave things safe behind me; and this

greatly perplexed me.

I had once a mind to have gone to the Brazils and have settled

myself there, for I was, as it were, naturalised to the place; but

I had some little scruple in my mind about religion, which

insensibly drew me back. However, it was not religion that kept me

from going there for the present; and as I had made no scruple of

being openly of the religion of the country all the while I was

among them, so neither did I yet; only that, now and then, having

of late thought more of it than formerly, when I began to think of

living and dying among them, I began to regret having professed

myself a Papist, and thought it might not be the best religion to

die with.

But, as I have said, this was not the main thing that kept me from

going to the Brazils, but that really I did not know with whom to

leave my effects behind me; so I resolved at last to go to England,

where, if I arrived, I concluded that I should make some

acquaintance, or find some relations, that would be faithful to me;

and, accordingly, I prepared to go to England with all my wealth.

In order to prepare things for my going home, I first (the Brazil

fleet being just going away) resolved to give answers suitable to

the just and faithful account of things I had from thence; and,

first, to the Prior of St. Augustine I wrote a letter full of

thanks for his just dealings, and the offer of the eight hundred

and seventy-two moidores which were undisposed of, which I desired

might be given, five hundred to the monastery, and three hundred

and seventy-two to the poor, as the prior should direct; desiring

the good padre's prayers for me, and the like. I wrote next a

letter of thanks to my two trustees, with all the acknowledgment

that so much justice and honesty called for: as for sending them

any present, they were far above having any occasion of it.

Lastly, I wrote to my partner, acknowledging his industry in the

improving the plantation, and his integrity in increasing the stock

of the works; giving him instructions for his future government of

my part, according to the powers I had left with my old patron, to

whom I desired him to send whatever became due to me, till he

should hear from me more particularly; assuring him that it was my

intention not only to come to him, but to settle myself there for

the remainder of my life. To this I added a very handsome present

of some Italian silks for his wife and two daughters, for such the

captain's son informed me he had; with two pieces of fine English

broadcloth, the best I could get in Lisbon, five pieces of black

baize, and some Flanders lace of a good value.

Having thus settled my affairs, sold my cargo, and turned all my

effects into good bills of exchange, my next difficulty was which

way to go to England: I had been accustomed enough to the sea, and

yet I had a strange aversion to go to England by the sea at that

time, and yet I could give no reason for it, yet the difficulty

increased upon me so much, that though I had once shipped my

baggage in order to go, yet I altered my mind, and that not once

but two or three times.

It is true I had been very unfortunate by sea, and this might be

one of the reasons; but let no man slight the strong impulses of

his own thoughts in cases of such moment: two of the ships which I

had singled out to go in, I mean more particularly singled out than

any other, having put my things on board one of them, and in the

other having agreed with the captain; I say two of these ships

miscarried. One was taken by the Algerines, and the other was lost

on the Start, near Torbay, and all the people drowned except three;

so that in either of those vessels I had been made miserable.

Having been thus harassed in my thoughts, my old pilot, to whom I

communicated everything, pressed me earnestly not to go by sea, but

either to go by land to the Groyne, and cross over the Bay of

Biscay to Rochelle, from whence it was but an easy and safe journey

by land to Paris, and so to Calais and Dover; or to go up to

Madrid, and so all the way by land through France. In a word, I

was so prepossessed against my going by sea at all, except from

Calais to Dover, that I resolved to travel all the way by land;

which, as I was not in haste, and did not value the charge, was by

much the pleasanter way: and to make it more so, my old captain

brought an English gentleman, the son of a merchant in Lisbon, who

was willing to travel with me; after which we picked up two more

English merchants also, and two young Portuguese gentlemen, the

last going to Paris only; so that in all there were six of us and

five servants; the two merchants and the two Portuguese, contenting

themselves with one servant between two, to save the charge; and as

for me, I got an English sailor to travel with me as a servant,

besides my man Friday, who was too much a stranger to be capable of

supplying the place of a servant on the road.

In this manner I set out from Lisbon; and our company being very

well mounted and armed, we made a little troop, whereof they did me

the honour to call me captain, as well because I was the oldest

man, as because I had two servants, and, indeed, was the origin of

the whole journey.

As I have troubled you with none of my sea journals, so I shall

trouble you now with none of my land journals; but some adventures

that happened to us in this tedious and difficult journey I must

not omit.

When we came to Madrid, we, being all of us strangers to Spain,

were willing to stay some time to see the court of Spain, and what

was worth observing; but it being the latter part of the summer, we

hastened away, and set out from Madrid about the middle of October;

but when we came to the edge of Navarre, we were alarmed, at

several towns on the way, with an account that so much snow was

falling on the French side of the mountains, that several

travellers were obliged to come back to Pampeluna, after having

attempted at an extreme hazard to pass on.

When we came to Pampeluna itself, we found it so indeed; and to me,

that had been always used to a hot climate, and to countries where

I could scarce bear any clothes on, the cold was insufferable; nor,

indeed, was it more painful than surprising to come but ten days

before out of Old Castile, where the weather was not only warm but

very hot, and immediately to feel a wind from the Pyrenean

Mountains so very keen, so severely cold, as to be intolerable and

to endanger benumbing and perishing of our fingers and toes.

Poor Friday was really frightened when he saw the mountains all

covered with snow, and felt cold weather, which he had never seen

or felt before in his life. To mend the matter, when we came to

Pampeluna it continued snowing with so much violence and so long,

that the people said winter was come before its time; and the

roads, which were difficult before, were now quite impassable; for,

in a word, the snow lay in some places too thick for us to travel,

and being not hard frozen, as is the case in the northern

countries, there was no going without being in danger of being

buried alive every step. We stayed no less than twenty days at

Pampeluna; when (seeing the winter coming on, and no likelihood of

its being better, for it was the severest winter all over Europe

that had been known in the memory of man) I proposed that we should

go away to Fontarabia, and there take shipping for Bordeaux, which

was a very little voyage. But, while I was considering this, there

came in four French gentlemen, who, having been stopped on the

French side of the passes, as we were on the Spanish, had found out

a guide, who, traversing the country near the head of Languedoc,

had brought them over the mountains by such ways that they were not

much incommoded with the snow; for where they met with snow in any

quantity, they said it was frozen hard enough to bear them and

their horses. We sent for this guide, who told us he would

undertake to carry us the same way, with no hazard from the snow,

provided we were armed sufficiently to protect ourselves from wild

beasts; for, he said, in these great snows it was frequent for some

wolves to show themselves at the foot of the mountains, being made

ravenous for want of food, the ground being covered with snow. We

told him we were well enough prepared for such creatures as they

were, if he would insure us from a kind of two-legged wolves, which

we were told we were in most danger from, especially on the French

side of the mountains. He satisfied us that there was no danger of

that kind in the way that we were to go; so we readily agreed to

follow him, as did also twelve other gentlemen with their servants,

some French, some Spanish, who, as I said, had attempted to go, and

were obliged to come back again.

Accordingly, we set out from Pampeluna with our guide on the 15th

of November; and indeed I was surprised when, instead of going

forward, he came directly back with us on the same road that we

came from Madrid, about twenty miles; when, having passed two

rivers, and come into the plain country, we found ourselves in a

warm climate again, where the country was pleasant, and no snow to

be seen; but, on a sudden, turning to his left, he approached the

mountains another way; and though it is true the hills and

precipices looked dreadful, yet he made so many tours, such

meanders, and led us by such winding ways, that we insensibly

passed the height of the mountains without being much encumbered

with the snow; and all on a sudden he showed us the pleasant and

fruitful provinces of Languedoc and Gascony, all green and

flourishing, though at a great distance, and we had some rough way

to pass still.

We were a little uneasy, however, when we found it snowed one whole

day and a night so fast that we could not travel; but he bid us be

easy; we should soon be past it all: we found, indeed, that we

began to descend every day, and to come more north than before; and

so, depending upon our guide, we went on.

It was about two hours before night when, our guide being something

before us, and not just in sight, out rushed three monstrous

wolves, and after them a bear, from a hollow way adjoining to a

thick wood; two of the wolves made at the guide, and had he been

far before us, he would have been devoured before we could have

helped him; one of them fastened upon his horse, and the other

attacked the man with such violence, that he had not time, or

presence of mind enough, to draw his pistol, but hallooed and cried

out to us most lustily. My man Friday being next me, I bade him

ride up and see what was the matter. As soon as Friday came in

sight of the man, he hallooed out as loud as the other, "O master!

O master!" but like a bold fellow, rode directly up to the poor

man, and with his pistol shot the wolf in the head that attacked

him.

It was happy for the poor man that it was my man Friday; for,

having been used to such creatures in his country, he had no fear

upon him, but went close up to him and shot him; whereas, any other

of us would have fired at a farther distance, and have perhaps

either missed the wolf or endangered shooting the man.

But it was enough to have terrified a bolder man than I; and,

indeed, it alarmed all our company, when, with the noise of

Friday's pistol, we heard on both sides the most dismal howling of

wolves; and the noise, redoubled by the echo of the mountains,

appeared to us as if there had been a prodigious number of them;

and perhaps there was not such a few as that we had no cause of

apprehension: however, as Friday had killed this wolf, the other

that had fastened upon the horse left him immediately, and fled,

without doing him any damage, having happily fastened upon his

head, where the bosses of the bridle had stuck in his teeth. But

the man was most hurt; for the raging creature had bit him twice,

once in the arm, and the other time a little above his knee; and

though he had made some defence, he was just tumbling down by the

disorder of his horse, when Friday came up and shot the wolf.

It is easy to suppose that at the noise of Friday's pistol we all

mended our pace, and rode up as fast as the way, which was very

difficult, would give us leave, to see what was the matter. As

soon as we came clear of the trees, which blinded us before, we saw

clearly what had been the case, and how Friday had disengaged the

poor guide, though we did not presently discern what kind of

creature it was he had killed.

CHAPTER XX - FIGHT BETWEEN FRIDAY AND A BEAR

BUT never was a fight managed so hardily, and in such a surprising

manner as that which followed between Friday and the bear, which

gave us all, though at first we were surprised and afraid for him,

the greatest diversion imaginable. As the bear is a heavy, clumsy

creature, and does not gallop as the wolf does, who is swift and

light, so he has two particular qualities, which generally are the

rule of his actions; first, as to men, who are not his proper prey

(he does not usually attempt them, except they first attack him,

unless he be excessively hungry, which it is probable might now be

the case, the ground being covered with snow), if you do not meddle

with him, he will not meddle with you; but then you must take care

to be very civil to him, and give him the road, for he is a very

nice gentleman; he will not go a step out of his way for a prince;

nay, if you are really afraid, your best way is to look another way

and keep going on; for sometimes if you stop, and stand still, and

look steadfastly at him, he takes it for an affront; but if you

throw or toss anything at him, though it were but a bit of stick as

big as your finger, he thinks himself abused, and sets all other

business aside to pursue his revenge, and will have satisfaction in

point of honour - that is his first quality: the next is, if he be

once affronted, he will never leave you, night or day, till he has

his revenge, but follows at a good round rate till he overtakes

you.

My man Friday had delivered our guide, and when we came up to him

he was helping him off his horse, for the man was both hurt and

frightened, when on a sudden we espied the bear come out of the

wood; and a monstrous one it was, the biggest by far that ever I

saw. We were all a little surprised when we saw him; but when

Friday saw him, it was easy to see joy and courage in the fellow's

countenance. "O! O! O!" says Friday, three times, pointing to him;

"O master, you give me te leave, me shakee te hand with him; me

makee you good laugh."

I was surprised to see the fellow so well pleased. "You fool,"

says I, "he will eat you up." - "Eatee me up! eatee me up!" says

Friday, twice over again; "me eatee him up; me makee you good

laugh; you all stay here, me show you good laugh." So down he

sits, and gets off his boots in a moment, and puts on a pair of

pumps (as we call the flat shoes they wear, and which he had in his

pocket), gives my other servant his horse, and with his gun away he

flew, swift like the wind.

The bear was walking softly on, and offered to meddle with nobody,

till Friday coming pretty near, calls to him, as if the bear could

understand him. "Hark ye, hark ye," says Friday, "me speakee with

you." We followed at a distance, for now being down on the Gascony

side of the mountains, we were entered a vast forest, where the

country was plain and pretty open, though it had many trees in it

scattered here and there. Friday, who had, as we say, the heels of

the bear, came up with him quickly, and took up a great stone, and

threw it at him, and hit him just on the head, but did him no more

harm than if he had thrown it against a wall; but it answered

Friday's end, for the rogue was so void of fear that he did it

purely to make the bear follow him, and show us some laugh as he

called it. As soon as the bear felt the blow, and saw him, he

turns about and comes after him, taking very long strides, and

shuffling on at a strange rate, so as would have put a horse to a

middling gallop; away reins Friday, and takes his course as if he

ran towards us for help; so we all resolved to fire at once upon

the bear, and deliver my man; though I was angry at him for

bringing the bear back upon us, when he was going about his own

business another way; and especially I was angry that he had turned

the bear upon us, and then ran away; and I called out, "You dog! is

this your making us laugh? Come away, and take your horse, that we

may shoot the creature." He heard me, and cried out, "No shoot, no

shoot; stand still, and you get much laugh:" and as the nimble

creature ran two feet for the bear's one, he turned on a sudden on

one side of us, and seeing a great oak-tree fit for his purpose, he

beckoned to us to follow; and doubling his pace, he got nimbly up

the tree, laying his gun down upon the ground, at about five or six

yards from the bottom of the tree. The bear soon came to the tree,

and we followed at a distance: the first thing he did he stopped at

the gun, smelt at it, but let it lie, and up he scrambles into the

tree, climbing like a cat, though so monstrous heavy. I was amazed

at the folly, as I thought it, of my man, and could not for my life

see anything to laugh at, till seeing the bear get up the tree, we

all rode near to him.

When we came to the tree, there was Friday got out to the small end

of a large branch, and the bear got about half-way to him. As soon

as the bear got out to that part where the limb of the tree was

weaker, "Ha!" says he to us, "now you see me teachee the bear

dance:" so he began jumping and shaking the bough, at which the

bear began to totter, but stood still, and began to look behind

him, to see how he should get back; then, indeed, we did laugh

heartily. But Friday had not done with him by a great deal; when

seeing him stand still, he called out to him again, as if he had

supposed the bear could speak English, "What, you come no farther?

pray you come farther;" so he left jumping and shaking the tree;

and the bear, just as if he understood what he said, did come a

little farther; then he began jumping again, and the bear stopped

again. We thought now was a good time to knock him in the head,

and called to Friday to stand still and we should shoot the bear:

but he cried out earnestly, "Oh, pray! Oh, pray! no shoot, me

shoot by and then:" he would have said by-and-by. However, to

shorten the story, Friday danced so much, and the bear stood so

ticklish, that we had laughing enough, but still could not imagine

what the fellow would do: for first we thought he depended upon

shaking the bear off; and we found the bear was too cunning for

that too; for he would not go out far enough to be thrown down, but

clung fast with his great broad claws and feet, so that we could

not imagine what would be the end of it, and what the jest would be

at last. But Friday put us out of doubt quickly: for seeing the

bear cling fast to the bough, and that he would not be persuaded to

come any farther, "Well, well," says Friday, "you no come farther,

me go; you no come to me, me come to you;" and upon this he went

out to the smaller end, where it would bend with his weight, and

gently let himself down by it, sliding down the bough till he came

near enough to jump down on his feet, and away he ran to his gun,

took it up, and stood still. "Well," said I to him, "Friday, what

will you do now? Why don't you shoot him?" "No shoot," says

Friday, "no yet; me shoot now, me no kill; me stay, give you one

more laugh:" and, indeed, so he did; for when the bear saw his

enemy gone, he came back from the bough, where he stood, but did it

very cautiously, looking behind him every step, and coming backward

till he got into the body of the tree, then, with the same hinder

end foremost, he came down the tree, grasping it with his claws,

and moving one foot at a time, very leisurely. At this juncture,

and just before he could set his hind foot on the ground, Friday

stepped up close to him, clapped the muzzle of his piece into his

ear, and shot him dead. Then the rogue turned about to see if we

did not laugh; and when he saw we were pleased by our looks, he

began to laugh very loud. "So we kill bear in my country," says

Friday. "So you kill them?" says I; "why, you have no guns." -

"No," says he, "no gun, but shoot great much long arrow." This was

a good diversion to us; but we were still in a wild place, and our

guide very much hurt, and what to do we hardly knew; the howling of

wolves ran much in my head; and, indeed, except the noise I once

heard on the shore of Africa, of which I have said something

already, I never heard anything that filled me with so much horror.

These things, and the approach of night, called us off, or else, as

Friday would have had us, we should certainly have taken the skin

of this monstrous creature off, which was worth saving; but we had

near three leagues to go, and our guide hastened us; so we left

him, and went forward on our journey.

The ground was still covered with snow, though not so deep and

dangerous as on the mountains; and the ravenous creatures, as we

heard afterwards, were come down into the forest and plain country,

pressed by hunger, to seek for food, and had done a great deal of

mischief in the villages, where they surprised the country people,

killed a great many of their sheep and horses, and some people too.

We had one dangerous place to pass, and our guide told us if there

were more wolves in the country we should find them there; and this

was a small plain, surrounded with woods on every side, and a long,

narrow defile, or lane, which we were to pass to get through the

wood, and then we should come to the village where we were to

lodge. It was within half-an-hour of sunset when we entered the

wood, and a little after sunset when we came into the plain: we met

with nothing in the first wood, except that in a little plain

within the wood, which was not above two furlongs over, we saw five

great wolves cross the road, full speed, one after another, as if

they had been in chase of some prey, and had it in view; they took

no notice of us, and were gone out of sight in a few moments. Upon

this, our guide, who, by the way, was but a fainthearted fellow,

bid us keep in a ready posture, for he believed there were more

wolves a-coming. We kept our arms ready, and our eyes about us;

but we saw no more wolves till we came through that wood, which was

near half a league, and entered the plain. As soon as we came into

the plain, we had occasion enough to look about us. The first

object we met with was a dead horse; that is to say, a poor horse

which the wolves had killed, and at least a dozen of them at work,

we could not say eating him, but picking his bones rather; for they

had eaten up all the flesh before. We did not think fit to disturb

them at their feast, neither did they take much notice of us.

Friday would have let fly at them, but I would not suffer him by

any means; for I found we were like to have more business upon our

hands than we were aware of. We had not gone half over the plain

when we began to hear the wolves howl in the wood on our left in a

frightful manner, and presently after we saw about a hundred coming

on directly towards us, all in a body, and most of them in a line,

as regularly as an army drawn up by experienced officers. I scarce

knew in what manner to receive them, but found to draw ourselves in

a close line was the only way; so we formed in a moment; but that

we might not have too much interval, I ordered that only every

other man should fire, and that the others, who had not fired,

should stand ready to give them a second volley immediately, if

they continued to advance upon us; and then that those that had

fired at first should not pretend to load their fusees again, but

stand ready, every one with a pistol, for we were all armed with a

fusee and a pair of pistols each man; so we were, by this method,

able to fire six volleys, half of us at a time; however, at present

we had no necessity; for upon firing the first volley, the enemy

made a full stop, being terrified as well with the noise as with

the fire. Four of them being shot in the head, dropped; several

others were wounded, and went bleeding off, as we could see by the

snow. I found they stopped, but did not immediately retreat;

whereupon, remembering that I had been told that the fiercest

creatures were terrified at the voice of a man, I caused all the

company to halloo as loud as they could; and I found the notion not

altogether mistaken; for upon our shout they began to retire and

turn about. I then ordered a second volley to be fired in their

rear, which put them to the gallop, and away they went to the

woods. This gave us leisure to charge our pieces again; and that

we might lose no time, we kept going; but we had but little more

than loaded our fusees, and put ourselves in readiness, when we

heard a terrible noise in the same wood on our left, only that it

was farther onward, the same way we were to go.

The night was coming on, and the light began to be dusky, which

made it worse on our side; but the noise increasing, we could

easily perceive that it was the howling and yelling of those

hellish creatures; and on a sudden we perceived three troops of

wolves, one on our left, one behind us, and one in our front, so

that we seemed to be surrounded with them: however, as they did not

fall upon us, we kept our way forward, as fast as we could make our

horses go, which, the way being very rough, was only a good hard

trot. In this manner, we came in view of the entrance of a wood,

through which we were to pass, at the farther side of the plain;

but we were greatly surprised, when coming nearer the lane or pass,

we saw a confused number of wolves standing just at the entrance.

On a sudden, at another opening of the wood, we heard the noise of

a gun, and looking that way, out rushed a horse, with a saddle and

a bridle on him, flying like the wind, and sixteen or seventeen

wolves after him, full speed: the horse had the advantage of them;

but as we supposed that he could not hold it at that rate, we

doubted not but they would get up with him at last: no question but

they did.

But here we had a most horrible sight; for riding up to the

entrance where the horse came out, we found the carcasses of

another horse and of two men, devoured by the ravenous creatures;

and one of the men was no doubt the same whom we heard fire the

gun, for there lay a gun just by him fired off; but as to the man,

his head and the upper part of his body was eaten up. This filled

us with horror, and we knew not what course to take; but the

creatures resolved us soon, for they gathered about us presently,

in hopes of prey; and I verily believe there were three hundred of

them. It happened, very much to our advantage, that at the

entrance into the wood, but a little way from it, there lay some

large timber-trees, which had been cut down the summer before, and

I suppose lay there for carriage. I drew my little troop in among

those trees, and placing ourselves in a line behind one long tree,

I advised them all to alight, and keeping that tree before us for a

breastwork, to stand in a triangle, or three fronts, enclosing our

horses in the centre. We did so, and it was well we did; for never

was a more furious charge than the creatures made upon us in this

place. They came on with a growling kind of noise, and mounted the

piece of timber, which, as I said, was our breastwork, as if they

were only rushing upon their prey; and this fury of theirs, it

seems, was principally occasioned by their seeing our horses behind

us. I ordered our men to fire as before, every other man; and they

took their aim so sure that they killed several of the wolves at

the first volley; but there was a necessity to keep a continual

firing, for they came on like devils, those behind pushing on those

before.

When we had fired a second volley of our fusees, we thought they

stopped a little, and I hoped they would have gone off, but it was

but a moment, for others came forward again; so we fired two

volleys of our pistols; and I believe in these four firings we had

killed seventeen or eighteen of them, and lamed twice as many, yet

they came on again. I was loth to spend our shot too hastily; so I

called my servant, not my man Friday, for he was better employed,

for, with the greatest dexterity imaginable, he had charged my

fusee and his own while we were engaged - but, as I said, I called

my other man, and giving him a horn of powder, I had him lay a

train all along the piece of timber, and let it be a large train.

He did so, and had but just time to get away, when the wolves came

up to it, and some got upon it, when I, snapping an unchanged

pistol close to the powder, set it on fire; those that were upon

the timber were scorched with it, and six or seven of them fell; or

rather jumped in among us with the force and fright of the fire; we

despatched these in an instant, and the rest were so frightened

with the light, which the night - for it was now very near dark -

made more terrible that they drew back a little; upon which I

ordered our last pistols to be fired off in one volley, and after

that we gave a shout; upon this the wolves turned tail, and we

sallied immediately upon near twenty lame ones that we found

struggling on the ground, and fell to cutting them with our swords,

which answered our expectation, for the crying and howling they

made was better understood by their fellows; so that they all fled

and left us.

We had, first and last, killed about threescore of them, and had it

been daylight we had killed many more. The field of battle being

thus cleared, we made forward again, for we had still near a league

to go. We heard the ravenous creatures howl and yell in the woods

as we went several times, and sometimes we fancied we saw some of

them; but the snow dazzling our eyes, we were not certain. In

about an hour more we came to the town where we were to lodge,

which we found in a terrible fright and all in arms; for, it seems,

the night before the wolves and some bears had broken into the

village, and put them in such terror that they were obliged to keep

guard night and day, but especially in the night, to preserve their

cattle, and indeed their people.

The next morning our guide was so ill, and his limbs swelled so

much with the rankling of his two wounds, that he could go no

farther; so we were obliged to take a new guide here, and go to

Toulouse, where we found a warm climate, a fruitful, pleasant

country, and no snow, no wolves, nor anything like them; but when

we told our story at Toulouse, they told us it was nothing but what

was ordinary in the great forest at the foot of the mountains,

especially when the snow lay on the ground; but they inquired much

what kind of guide we had got who would venture to bring us that

way in such a severe season, and told us it was surprising we were

not all devoured. When we told them how we placed ourselves and

the horses in the middle, they blamed us exceedingly, and told us

it was fifty to one but we had been all destroyed, for it was the

sight of the horses which made the wolves so furious, seeing their

prey, and that at other times they are really afraid of a gun; but

being excessively hungry, and raging on that account, the eagerness

to come at the horses had made them senseless of danger, and that

if we had not by the continual fire, and at last by the stratagem

of the train of powder, mastered them, it had been great odds but

that we had been torn to pieces; whereas, had we been content to

have sat still on horseback, and fired as horsemen, they would not

have taken the horses so much for their own, when men were on their

backs, as otherwise; and withal, they told us that at last, if we

had stood altogether, and left our horses, they would have been so

eager to have devoured them, that we might have come off safe,

especially having our firearms in our hands, being so many in

number. For my part, I was never so sensible of danger in my

life; for, seeing above three hundred devils come roaring and open-

mouthed to devour us, and having nothing to shelter us or retreat

to, I gave myself over for lost; and, as it was, I believe I shall

never care to cross those mountains again: I think I would much

rather go a thousand leagues by sea, though I was sure to meet with

a storm once a-week.

I have nothing uncommon to take notice of in my passage through

France - nothing but what other travellers have given an account of

with much more advantage than I can. I travelled from Toulouse to

Paris, and without any considerable stay came to Calais, and landed

safe at Dover the 14th of January, after having had a severe cold

season to travel in.

I was now come to the centre of my travels, and had in a little

time all my new-discovered estate safe about me, the bills of

exchange which I brought with me having been currently paid.

My principal guide and privy-counsellor was my good ancient widow,

who, in gratitude for the money I had sent her, thought no pains

too much nor care too great to employ for me; and I trusted her so

entirely that I was perfectly easy as to the security of my

effects; and, indeed, I was very happy from the beginning, and now

to the end, in the unspotted integrity of this good gentlewoman.

And now, having resolved to dispose of my plantation in the

Brazils, I wrote to my old friend at Lisbon, who, having offered it

to the two merchants, the survivors of my trustees, who lived in

the Brazils, they accepted the offer, and remitted thirty-three

thousand pieces of eight to a correspondent of theirs at Lisbon to

pay for it.

In return, I signed the instrument of sale in the form which they

sent from Lisbon, and sent it to my old man, who sent me the bills

of exchange for thirty-two thousand eight hundred pieces of eight

for the estate, reserving the payment of one hundred moidores a

year to him (the old man) during his life, and fifty moidores

afterwards to his son for his life, which I had promised them, and

which the plantation was to make good as a rent-charge. And thus I

have given the first part of a life of fortune and adventure - a

life of Providence's chequer-work, and of a variety which the world

will seldom be able to show the like of; beginning foolishly, but

closing much more happily than any part of it ever gave me leave so

much as to hope for.

Any one would think that in this state of complicated good fortune

I was past running any more hazards - and so, indeed, I had been,

if other circumstances had concurred; but I was inured to a

wandering life, had no family, nor many relations; nor, however

rich, had I contracted fresh acquaintance; and though I had sold my

estate in the Brazils, yet I could not keep that country out of my

head, and had a great mind to be upon the wing again; especially I

could not resist the strong inclination I had to see my island, and

to know if the poor Spaniards were in being there. My true friend,

the widow, earnestly dissuaded me from it, and so far prevailed

with me, that for almost seven years she prevented my running

abroad, during which time I took my two nephews, the children of

one of my brothers, into my care; the eldest, having something of

his own, I bred up as a gentleman, and gave him a settlement of

some addition to his estate after my decease. The other I placed

with the captain of a ship; and after five years, finding him a

sensible, bold, enterprising young fellow, I put him into a good

ship, and sent him to sea; and this young fellow afterwards drew me

in, as old as I was, to further adventures myself.

In the meantime, I in part settled myself here; for, first of all,

I married, and that not either to my disadvantage or

dissatisfaction, and had three children, two sons and one daughter;

but my wife dying, and my nephew coming home with good success from

a voyage to Spain, my inclination to go abroad, and his

importunity, prevailed, and engaged me to go in his ship as a

private trader to the East Indies; this was in the year 1694.

In this voyage I visited my new colony in the island, saw my

successors the Spaniards, had the old story of their lives and of

the villains I left there; how at first they insulted the poor

Spaniards, how they afterwards agreed, disagreed, united,

separated, and how at last the Spaniards were obliged to use

violence with them; how they were subjected to the Spaniards, how

honestly the Spaniards used them - a history, if it were entered

into, as full of variety and wonderful accidents as my own part -

particularly, also, as to their battles with the Caribbeans, who

landed several times upon the island, and as to the improvement

they made upon the island itself, and how five of them made an

attempt upon the mainland, and brought away eleven men and five

women prisoners, by which, at my coming, I found about twenty young

children on the island.

Here I stayed about twenty days, left them supplies of all

necessary things, and particularly of arms, powder, shot, clothes,

tools, and two workmen, which I had brought from England with me,

viz. a carpenter and a smith.

Besides this, I shared the lands into parts with them, reserved to

myself the property of the whole, but gave them such parts

respectively as they agreed on; and having settled all things with

them, and engaged them not to leave the place, I left them there.

From thence I touched at the Brazils, from whence I sent a bark,

which I bought there, with more people to the island; and in it,

besides other supplies, I sent seven women, being such as I found

proper for service, or for wives to such as would take them. As to

the Englishmen, I promised to send them some women from England,

with a good cargo of necessaries, if they would apply themselves to

planting - which I afterwards could not perform. The fellows

proved very honest and diligent after they were mastered and had

their properties set apart for them. I sent them, also, from the

Brazils, five cows, three of them being big with calf, some sheep,

and some hogs, which when I came again were considerably increased.

But all these things, with an account how three hundred Caribbees

came and invaded them, and ruined their plantations, and how they

fought with that whole number twice, and were at first defeated,

and one of them killed; but at last, a storm destroying their

enemies' canoes, they famished or destroyed almost all the rest,

and renewed and recovered the possession of their plantation, and

still lived upon the island.

All these things, with some very surprising incidents in some new

adventures of my own, for ten years more, I shall give a farther

account of in the Second Part of my Story.